

WITH FREE ONLINE AUDIO

ENGLISH FOR EVERYONE

PRACTICE BOOK

LEVEL 4 ADVANCED



A **COMPLETE SELF-STUDY** PROGRAMME

Author

Claire Hart is a freelance author of English-language materials. She has published a range of print materials and created several online courses. She also teaches English at the University of Applied Sciences in Neu-Ulm, Germany.

Course consultant

Tim Bowen has taught English and trained teachers in more than 30 countries worldwide. He is the co-author of works on pronunciation teaching and language-teaching methodology, and author of numerous books for English-language teachers. He is currently a freelance materials writer, editor, and translator. He is a member of the Chartered Institute of Linguists.

Language consultant

Professor Susan Barduhn is an experienced English-language teacher, teacher trainer, and author, who has contributed to numerous publications. In addition to directing English-language courses in at least four different continents, she has been President of the International Association of Teachers of English as a Foreign Language, and an adviser to the British Council and the US State Department. She is currently a Professor at the School of International Training in Vermont, USA.

ENGLISH FOR EVERYONE

PRACTICE BOOK

LEVEL 4 ADVANCED



DK

Penguin Random House

DK India
Senior Editors Vineetha Mokkil, Anita Kakar
Senior Art Editor Chhaya Sajwan
Project Editor Antara Moitra
Editors Agnibesh Das, Nisha Shaw, Seetha Natesh
Art Editors Namita, Heena Sharma, Sukriti Sobti, Shipra Jain, Aanchal Singhal
Assistant Editors Ira Pundeer, Ateendriya Gupta, Sneha Sunder Benjamin, Ankita Yadav
Assistant Art Editors Roshni Kapur, Meenal Goel, Priyansha Tuli
Illustrators Ivy Roy, Arun Pottirayil, Bharti Karakoti, Rahul Kumar
Picture Researcher Deepak Negi
Managing Editor Pakshalika Jayaprakash
Managing Art Editor Arunesh Talapatra
Production Manager Pankaj Sharma
Pre-production Manager Balwant Singh
Senior DTP Designer Vishal Bhatia, Neeraj Bhatia
DTP Designer Sachin Gupta
Jacket Designer Surabhi Wadhwa
Managing Jackets Editor Saloni Singh
Senior DTP Designer (jackets) Harish Aggarwal

DK UK
Editorial Assistants Jessica Cawthra, Sarah Edwards
Illustrators Edwood Burn, Denise Joos, Michael Parkin, Jemma Westing
Audio Producer Liz Hammond
Managing Editor Daniel Mills
Managing Art Editor Anna Hall
Project Manager Christine Stroyan
Jacket Designer Natalie Godwin
Jacket Editor Claire Gell
Jacket Design Development Manager Sophia MTT
Producer, Pre-Production Luca Frassinetti
Producer Mary Slater
Publisher Andrew Macintyre
Art Director Karen Self
Publishing Director Jonathan Metcalf

First published in Great Britain in 2016 by
Dorling Kindersley Limited
80 Strand, London, WC2R 0RL

Copyright © 2016 Dorling Kindersley Limited
A Penguin Random House Company
10 8 6 4 2 1 3 5 7 9
001–290006–Jun/2016

All rights reserved.
No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in or introduced into a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form, or by any means (electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise), without the prior written permission of the copyright owner.

A CIP catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.
ISBN: 978-0-2412-4353-4

Printed and bound in China

All images © Dorling Kindersley Limited
For further information see: www.dkimages.com

A WORLD OF IDEAS:
SEE ALL THERE IS TO KNOW

www.dk.com

Contents

How the course works 8

01 Making conversation 12
New language Present tenses
Vocabulary Meeting new people
New skill Using question tags

02 Action and state verbs 16
New language State verbs in continuous forms
Vocabulary Action and state verbs
New skill Describing states

03 Using collocations 18
New language Collocations
Vocabulary Beliefs and opinions
New skill Talking about your life

04 Complex descriptions 22
New language General and specific adjectives
Vocabulary Personalities
New skill Ordering adjectives

05 Making general statements 26
New language Introductory "it"
Vocabulary Talents and abilities
New skill Expressing general truths

06 Vocabulary Travel and tourism 29

07 Phrasal verbs 30
New language Phrasal verbs overview
Vocabulary Travel
New skill Using complex phrasal verbs

08 Narrative tenses 34
New language The past perfect continuous
Vocabulary Travel adjectives and idioms
New skill Talking about a variety of past actions

09 Giving advice and opinions 38
New language Modals for advice and opinion
Vocabulary Recommendations
New skill Giving advice and opinions

10 Making predictions 42
New language Degrees of likelihood
Vocabulary Idioms about time
New skill Talking about possibilities

11 **Vocabulary** Family and relationships 45

12 **Using discourse markers** 46
New language Linking information
Vocabulary Family history
New skill Talking about relationships

13 **Past habits and states** 50
New language "Used to" and "would"
Vocabulary Family values
New skill Contrasting the past with the present

14 **Comparing and contrasting** 54
New language "As... as" comparisons
Vocabulary Adjective-noun collocations
New skill Comparing and contrasting

15 **Two comparatives together** 58
New language Two comparatives together
Vocabulary Age and population
New skill Expressing cause, effect, and change

16 **Vocabulary** Studying 61

17 **Taking notes** 62
New language Organizing information
Vocabulary Academic life
New skill Taking notes

18 **Speaking approximately** 66
New language Generalization
Vocabulary Approximate quantity phrases
New skill Talking about numbers

19 **Changing emphasis** 70
New language The passive voice
Vocabulary Online learning
New skill Changing sentence emphasis

20 **Things that might happen** 74
New language "What if," "suppose," "in case"
Vocabulary Exams and assessment
New skill Talking about hypothetical situations

21 **Vocabulary** Working 77

22 **Job applications** 78
New language Prepositions and gerunds
Vocabulary Job applications
New skill Writing a résumé and cover letter

23 **Asking polite questions** 82
New language Direct and indirect questions
Vocabulary Job interviews
New skill Asking questions politely

24 **Complex verb patterns** 86
New language Verb + infinitive / gerund
Vocabulary World of work
New skill Using complex verb patterns

25 **Double object verbs** 90
New language Double object verbs
Vocabulary New businesses
New skill Talking about starting a business

26 **Vocabulary** Meeting and presenting 93

27 **Reflexive pronouns** 94
New language Reflexive pronouns
Vocabulary Workplace language
New skill Talking about work issues

28 **Meeting and planning** 98
New language Combining verbs
Vocabulary Office tasks
New skill Taking part in meetings

29 **Qualifying descriptions** 102
New language Non-gradable adjectives
Vocabulary Qualifying words
New skill Adding detail to descriptions

30 **Expressing purpose** 106
New language "In order to," "so that"
Vocabulary Language of apology
New skill Expressing purpose

31 **Vocabulary** Environmental concerns 109

32 **Conditional tenses** 110
New language The third conditional
Vocabulary Environmental threats
New skill Talking about an unreal past

33 **Past regrets** 114
New language "Should have" and "ought to have"
Vocabulary Time markers
New skill Expressing regret about the past

34 **Actions and consequences** 118
New language Dependent prepositions
Vocabulary Actions and consequences
New skill Changing sentence stress

35 **Few or little?** 122
New language "Few," "little," "fewer," "less"
Vocabulary Nature and environment
New skill Describing quantities

36 **Vocabulary** Tradition and superstition 125

37 **Past possibility** 126
New language "Might / may / could" in the past
Vocabulary Urban myths
New skill Talking about past possibility

38 **Speculation and deduction** 130
New language More uses for modal verbs
Vocabulary Phrasal verbs with "out"
New skill Speculating and making deductions

39 **Mixed conditionals** 133
New language Mixed conditionals
Vocabulary Personality traits
New skill Talking about hypothetical situations

40 **Adding "-ever" to question words** 136
New language Words with "-ever"
Vocabulary Chance and weather phrases
New skill Joining a clause to a sentence

41 **Vocabulary** Media and celebrity 139

42 **Reporting with passives** 140
New language Passive voice for reporting
Vocabulary Reporting language
New skill Distancing yourself from facts

43 **Making indirect statements** 144
New language Indirect statements
Vocabulary Hedging language
New skill Expressing uncertainty

44 **Adding emphasis** 148
New language Inversion after adverbials
Vocabulary Media and celebrity
New skill Adding emphasis to statements

45 **Shifting focus** 152
New language Focusing with clauses
Vocabulary Phrases for emphasis
New skill Shifting focus

46 **Vocabulary** Crime and the law 155

47 **Relative clauses** 156
New language Relative clauses
Vocabulary Crime and criminals
New skill Specifying and elaborating

48 **More relative clauses** 160
New language Where, when, whereby, whose
Vocabulary Courtroom phrases
New skill Using relative words

49 **Modal verbs in the future** 164
New language "Will be able to," "will have to"
Vocabulary Legal terms
New skill Expressing future ability and obligation

50 **Modal verbs overview** 168
New language Using modal verbs
Vocabulary Modal verbs
New skill Asking, offering, and predicting

51 **Vocabulary** Customs and cultures 171

52 **Talking about groups** 172
New language Using adjectives as nouns
Vocabulary Countries and nationalities
New skill Generalizing politely

53 **Old and new situations** 176
New language "Be used to" and "get used to"
Vocabulary Moving and living abroad
New skill Talking about old and new situations

54 **Articles** 180
New language Articles
Vocabulary Commonly misspelled words
New skill Saying words with silent letters

55 **Abstract ideas** 184
New language Concrete and abstract nouns
Vocabulary Education systems
New skill Talking about abstract ideas

56 **Vocabulary** Technology and the future 187

57 **Future hopes** 188
New language "Wish" with "would" or "could"
Vocabulary Hopes for the future
New skill Talking about future hopes and wishes

58 **The future continuous** 192
New language The future continuous with "will"
Vocabulary Polite requests
New skill Planning your career

59 **The future perfect** 196
New language The future perfect
Vocabulary Life plans
New skill Making plans and predictions

60 **The future in the past** 200
New language "Would" and "was going to"
Vocabulary Changing plans
New skill Saying what you thought

61 **Vocabulary** Art and culture 203

62 **Leaving words out** 204
New language Ellipsis
Vocabulary Entertainment
New skill Leaving out unneccessary words

63 **Substituting words** 208
New language Substitution
Vocabulary Books and reading
New skill Replacing phrases

64 **Shortening infinitives** 212
New language Reduced infinitives
Vocabulary Music and performance
New skill Avoiding repetition

65 **Expressing reactions** 216
New language Informal discourse markers
Vocabulary Advanced prefixes
New skill Structuring conversation

66 **Getting things done** 220
New language "Have / get something done"
Vocabulary Services and repairs
New skill Describing things people do for you

67 **Complex agreement** 224
New language Complex agreement
Vocabulary Collective nouns
New skill Using the correct agreement

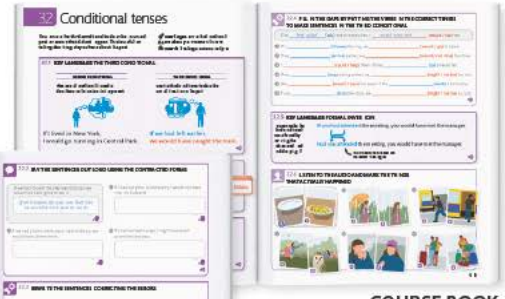
68 **"So" and "such"** 228
New language "So" and "such" for emphasis
Vocabulary Medical science
New skill Emphasizing descriptions

69 **Using articles to generalize** 232
New language Generic "the"
Vocabulary Exploration and invention
New skill Using advanced articles

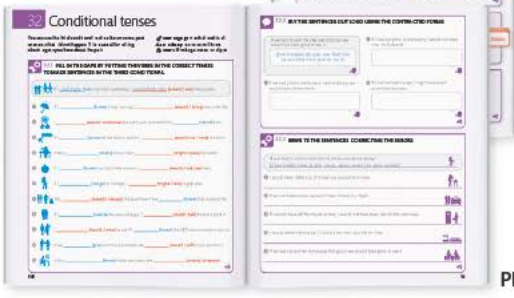
Answers 236

How the course works

English for Everyone is designed for people who want to teach themselves the English language. Like all language courses, it covers the core skills: grammar, vocabulary, pronunciation, listening, speaking, reading, and writing. Unlike in other courses, the skills are taught and practiced as visually as possible, using images and graphics to help you understand and remember. The practice book is packed with exercises designed to reinforce the lessons you have learned in the course book. Work through the units in order, making full use of the audio available on the website and app.



COURSE BOOK

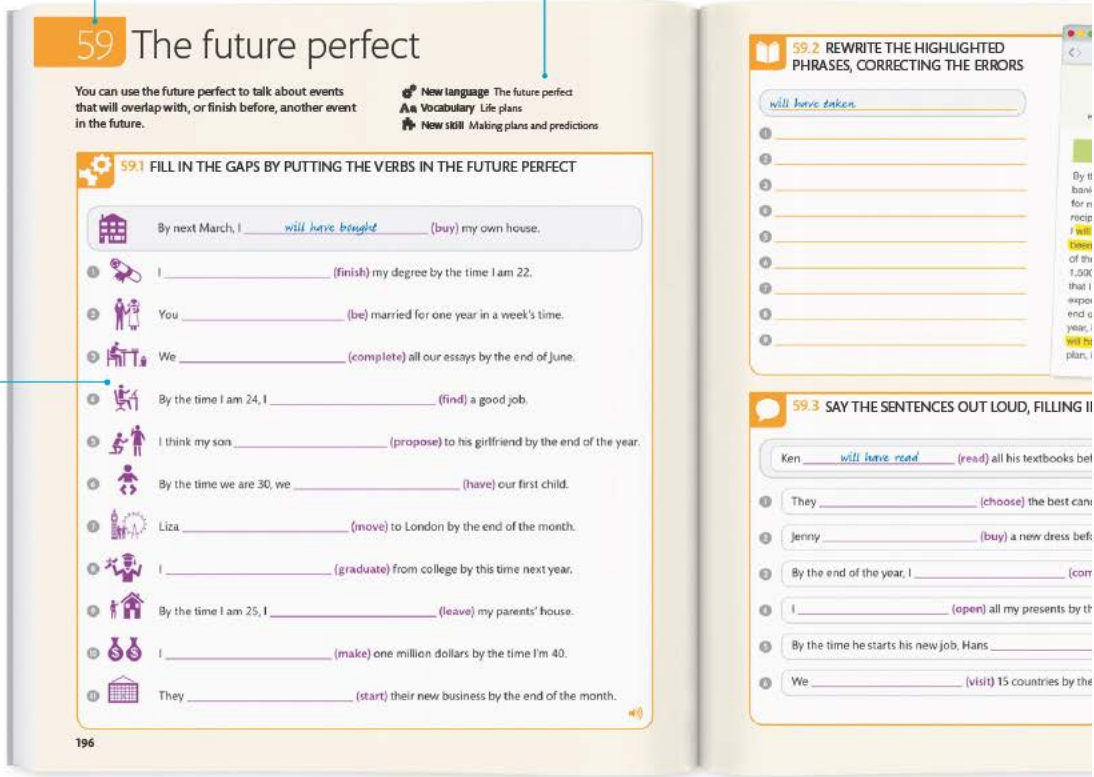


PRACTICE BOOK

Unit number The book is divided into units. Each practice book unit tests the language taught in the course book unit with the same number.

Practice points Every unit begins with a summary of the key practice points.

Modules Each unit is broken down into modules, which should be done in order. You can take a break from learning after completing any module.



59 The future perfect

You can use the future perfect to talk about events that will overlap with, or finish before, another event in the future.

New language The future perfect
Vocabulary Life plans
New skill Making plans and predictions

59.1 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE FUTURE PERFECT

By next March, I will have bought (buy) my own house.

1 I _____ (finish) my degree by the time I am 22.
2 You _____ (be) married for one year in a week's time.
3 We _____ (complete) all our essays by the end of June.
4 By the time I am 24, I _____ (find) a good job.
5 I think my son _____ (propose) to his girlfriend by the end of the year.
6 By the time we are 30, we _____ (have) our first child.
7 Liza _____ (move) to London by the end of the month.
8 I _____ (graduate) from college by this time next year.
9 By the time I am 25, I _____ (leave) my parents' house.
10 I _____ (make) one million dollars by the time I'm 40.
11 They _____ (start) their new business by the end of the month.

196

59.2 REWRITE THE HIGHLIGHTED PHRASES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

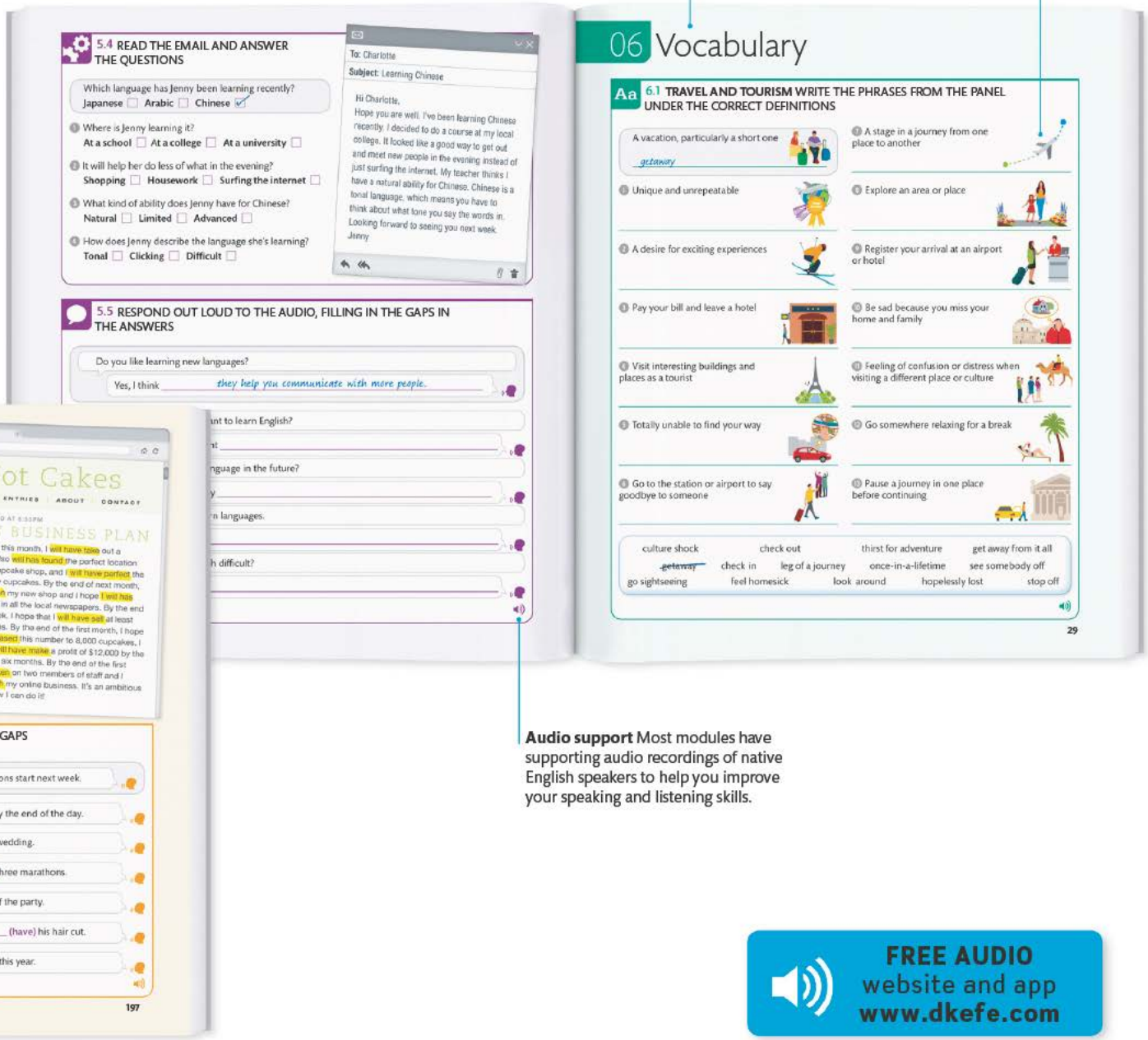
will have taken

59.3 SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD, FILLING I

Ken will have read (read) all his textbooks bef
They _____ (choose) the best can
Jenny _____ (buy) a new dress bef
By the end of the year, I _____ (com
I _____ (open) all my presents by th
By the time he starts his new job, Hans _____
We _____ (visit) 15 countries by the

Vocabulary Throughout the book, vocabulary pages test your memory of key English words and phrases taught in the course book.

Visual practice Images and graphics offer visual cues to help fix the most useful and important English words in your memory.



5.4 READ THE EMAIL AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

Which language has Jenny been learning recently?
Japanese ☐ Arabic ☐ Chinese ☑

1 Where is Jenny learning it?
At a school ☐ At a college ☐ At a university ☐

2 It will help her do less of what in the evening?
Shopping ☐ Housework ☐ Surfing the internet ☐

3 What kind of ability does Jenny have for Chinese?
Natural ☐ Limited ☐ Advanced ☐

4 How does Jenny describe the language she's learning?
Tonal ☐ Clicking ☐ Difficult ☐

To: Charlotte
Subject: Learning Chinese

Hi Charlotte,
Hope you are well. I've been learning Chinese recently. I decided to do a course at my local college. It looked like a good way to get out and meet new people in the evening instead of just surfing the internet. My teacher thinks I have a natural ability for Chinese. Chinese is a tonal language, which means you have to think about what tone you say the words in. Looking forward to seeing you next week.
Jenny

5.5 RESPOND OUT LOUD TO THE AUDIO, FILLING IN THE GAPS IN THE ANSWERS

Do you like learning new languages?
Yes, I think they help you communicate with more people.

Hot Cakes
HOME ENTRIES ABOUT CONTACT
MY BUSINESS PLAN

THE GAPS

197

06 Vocabulary

Aa 6.1 TRAVEL AND TOURISM WRITE THE PHRASES FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

A vacation, particularly a short one — getaway
1 A stage in a journey from one place to another
2 Unique and unrepeatable
3 Explore an area or place
4 A desire for exciting experiences
5 Register your arrival at an airport or hotel
6 Pay your bill and leave a hotel
7 Be sad because you miss your home and family
8 Visit interesting buildings and places as a tourist
9 Feeling of confusion or distress when visiting a different place or culture
10 Totally unable to find your way
11 Go somewhere relaxing for a break
12 Go to the station or airport to say goodbye to someone
13 Pause a journey in one place before continuing

culture shock | check out | thirst for adventure | get away from it all
~~getaway~~ | check in | leg of a journey | once-in-a-lifetime | see somebody off
go sightseeing | feel homesick | look around | hopelessly lost | stop off

29

Audio support Most modules have supporting audio recordings of native English speakers to help you improve your speaking and listening skills.

FREE AUDIO
website and app
www.dkefe.com

Practice modules

Each exercise is carefully graded to drill and test the language taught in the corresponding course book units. Working through the exercises alongside the course book will help you remember what you have learned and become more fluent. Every exercise is introduced with a symbol to indicate which skill is being practiced.

GRAMMAR
Apply new language rules in different contexts.

VOCABULARY
Cement your understanding of key vocabulary.

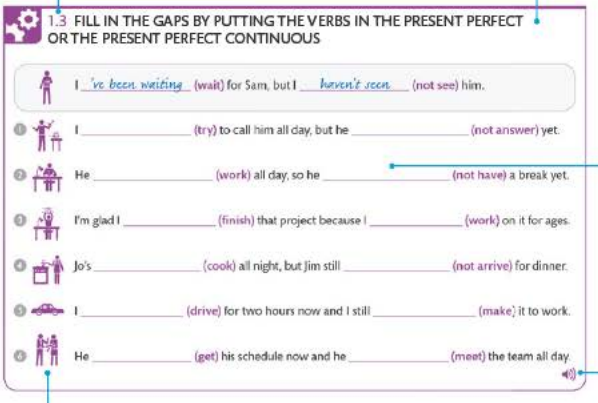
READING
Examine target language in real-life English contexts.

SPEAKING
Compare your spoken English to model audio recordings.

LISTENING
Test your understanding of spoken English.

Module number Every module is identified with a unique number, so you can easily locate answers and related audio.

Exercise instruction Every exercise is introduced with a brief instruction, telling you what you need to do.


1.3 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE PRESENT PERFECT OR THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

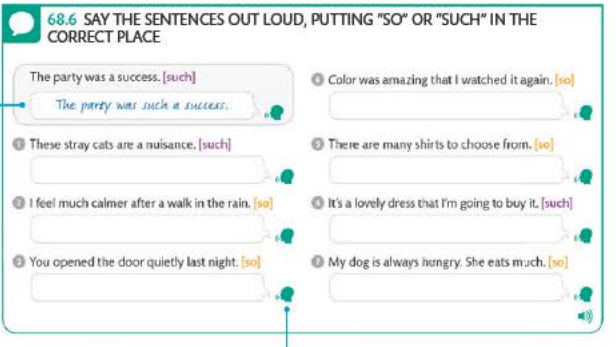
I *'ve been waiting* (wait) for Sam, but I *haven't seen* (not see) him.

1. I _____ (try) to call him all day, but he _____ (not answer) yet.
2. He _____ (work) all day, so he _____ (not have) a break yet.
3. I'm glad I _____ (finish) that project because I _____ (work) on it for ages.
4. Jo's _____ (cook) all night, but Jim still _____ (not arrive) for dinner.
5. I _____ (drive) for two hours now and I still _____ (make) it to work.
6. He _____ (get) his schedule now and he _____ (meet) the team all day.

Space for writing You are encouraged to write your answers in the book for future reference.

Supporting audio This symbol shows that the answers to the exercise are available as audio tracks. Listen to them after completing the exercise.

Supporting graphics Visual cues are given to help you understand the exercises.


68.6 SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD, PUTTING "SO" OR "SUCH" IN THE CORRECT PLACE

The party was a success. [such]
The party was such a success.

1. These stray cats are a nuisance. [such]
2. I feel much calmer after a walk in the rain. [so]
3. You opened the door quietly last night. [so]
4. Color was amazing that I watched it again. [so]
5. There are many shirts to choose from. [so]
6. It's a lovely dress that I'm going to buy it. [such]
7. My dog is always hungry. She eats much. [so]

Sample answer The first question of each exercise is answered for you, to help make the task easy to understand.

Listening exercise This symbol indicates that you should listen to an audio track in order to answer the questions in the exercise.


10.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK WHETHER EACH ACTIVITY IS LIKELY OR UNLIKELY TO HAPPEN

1. Likely ☑ Unlikely ☐
2. Likely ☐ Unlikely ☐
3. Likely ☐ Unlikely ☐
4. Likely ☐ Unlikely ☐
5. Likely ☐ Unlikely ☐

42

Speaking exercise This symbol indicates that you should say your answers out loud, then compare them to model recordings included in your audio files.

Audio

English for Everyone features extensive supporting audio materials. You are encouraged to use them as much as you can, to improve your understanding of spoken English, and to make your own accent and pronunciation more natural. Each file can be played, paused, and repeated as often as you like, until you are confident you understand what has been said.



LISTENING EXERCISES
This symbol indicates that you should listen to an audio track in order to answer the questions in the exercise.



SUPPORTING AUDIO
This symbol indicates that extra audio material is available for you to listen to after completing the module.



FREE AUDIO
website and app
www.dkefe.com

Answers

An answers section at the back of the book lists the correct answers for every exercise. Turn to these pages whenever you finish a module and compare your answers with the samples provided, to see how well you have understood each teaching point.

24

24.1
1. She finally managed **to cut** down the number of hours she works from 40 to 35.
2. I think our manager should allow us **to leave** work a bit earlier on Friday afternoon.
3. This new piece of software enables me **to make** updates very quickly.
4. Sam threatened **to leave** if the boss doesn't find a new employee to help him.
5. I'm the person in my office who always **volunteers** to stay late.
6. This is the first time that a colleague has invited me **to have** dinner at their home.
7. The merger deal we completed last month has caused our profits **to** increase.
8. He doesn't like people **telling** him what to do while he's at work.
9. The boss has offered **to send** me on a training course to improve my computer skills.
10. He enjoys **playing** the role of the hot-shot manager when visitors come.

24.2
1. My colleague enjoys **hearing** from satisfied customers.
2. My new smartphone **enables** me to stay connected with my office wherever I am.
3. She hates her colleagues **telling** her what she should do in her department.
4. We like our customers **to give** us feedback on the services we provide them.
5. My boss **offered** to give me an office of my own next year.

24.3
1. False 2. True 3. Not given
4. True 5. False

24.4
1. She always stops **to look** at what's on at the movie theater when we walk past it.
2. I remember **watching** that movie with Brian Owen, but it was a very long time ago.
3. She reminded him **to go** to the supermarket after work, but he still forgot!
4. I wish they would stop **looking** at us like that. They're making me nervous.
5. He finally remembered **to buy** me some flowers for my birthday. He usually forgets.
6. When I was a child, my mother always encouraged me **to eat** fruit and vegetables.
7. The turbulence caused the airplane **to move** from side to side for about 10 minutes.
8. He knew that we weren't interested in what he had to say, but he still went on **talking**.
9. I would advise you **to take** an aspirin for your headache.

Answers Find the answers to every exercise printed at the back of the book.

Audio This symbol indicates that the answers can also be listened to.

Exercise numbers Match these numbers to the unique identifier at the top-left corner of each exercise.

01 Making conversation

Verbs have various forms in the present tense, including continuous and perfect. You need to understand these differences when making question tags.

New language Present tenses
Aa Vocabulary Meeting new people
New skill Using question tags

1.1 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Today is being my first day in my new job at the bank. ☐
Today is my first day in my new job at the bank. ☑

1. I'm being a sales assistant in a department store that opened recently. ☐
   I'm a sales assistant in a department store that opened recently. ☐
2. Hurry up! The bus is coming. If we miss it, we will be late for work. ☐
   Hurry up! The bus comes. If we miss it, we will be late for work. ☐
3. I'm meeting my new team leader right now to discuss plans for next year. ☐
   I meet my new team leader right now to discuss plans for next year. ☐
4. I'm getting up at 7 o'clock every day to get to the office on time. ☐
   I get up at 7 o'clock every day to get to the office on time. ☐
5. I'm always having a coffee break at 10 o'clock so I can work faster. ☐
   I always have a coffee break at 10 o'clock so I can work faster. ☐
6. Today I'm wearing a new white blouse I bought from the store near my office. ☐
   Today I wear a new white blouse I bought from the store near my office. ☐
7. She's working in the New York office at the moment, but she's planning to move to California. ☐
   She working in the New York office at the moment, but she's planning to move to California. ☐
8. I'm thinking I'm in the wrong building. Cathy lives in building number seven. ☐
   I think I'm in the wrong building. Cathy lives in building number seven. ☐
9. I'm having lunch in 30 minutes. Would you like to join me? ☐
   I have lunch in 30 minutes. Would you like to join me? ☐
10. I'm going home at 5 o'clock every day after I finish work. ☐
    I go home at 5 o'clock every day after I finish work. ☐

1.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

My boss is being a lot older than me.
My boss is a lot older than me.

1. I'm being the new member of the team.
2. He is always sits at that desk. You'll have to move!
3. The train is arriving at 7:22am every morning.
4. The bus is usually being on time, but not today.
5. I talk to my boss at the moment.
6. I work on the new project with David today.
7. We are being a very good team!
8. I'm having a meeting at 9 o'clock every day.
9. I wait for you in front of the office.

1.3 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE PRESENT PERFECT OR THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS



I *'ve been waiting* **(wait)** for Sam, but I *haven't seen* **(not see)** him.



1. I _____ **(try)** to call him all day, but he _____ **(not answer)** yet.



2. He _____ **(work)** all day, so he _____ **(not have)** a break yet.



3. I'm glad I _____ **(finish)** that project because I _____ **(work)** on it for ages.



4. Jo's _____ **(cook)** all night, but Jim still _____ **(not arrive)** for dinner.



5. I _____ **(drive)** for two hours now and I still _____ **(make)** it to work.



6. He _____ **(get)** his schedule now and he _____ **(meet)** the team all day.

1.4 MATCH THE STATEMENTS TO THE CORRECT QUESTION TAGS

	John is our new team leader,	shouldn't he?
1	Rebecca is from Australia,	aren't you?
2	Gary doesn't live far from the office,	hasn't he?
3	They went to college in the US,	isn't he?
4	You're working in the Singapore office,	haven't you?
5	The new employees have their badges,	hasn't she?
6	She's been waiting for 20 minutes,	didn't they?
7	Angelina worked as an engineer in New York,	isn't she?
8	Mark has traveled to many countries in Europe,	does he?
9	They are planning to move out of the city,	aren't they?
10	Alan should go on the training course next week,	don't they?
11	You have been to Singapore on a business trip,	didn't she?

1.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS



Heather Miller, a well-known travel writer, is being interviewed.

Heather Miller comes from the UK.
True ☑ **False** ☐

1 Heather started travel writing 12 years ago.
True ☐ **False** ☐

2 Heather has been to fewer than 20 countries.
True ☐ **False** ☐

3 Heather has been to Central America.
True ☐ **False** ☐

4 Heather writes recipes in a notebook.
True ☐ **False** ☐

5 Heather thinks scorpion soup tastes awful.
True ☐ **False** ☐

1.6 SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD, ADDING THE CORRECT QUESTION TAGS

Robin should tell us when he's going to be out of the office, *shouldn't he* ?

1. Maxine always takes the 7:45 train to work like Paul, _____ ?
2. Your car is parked on the road in front of the company reception, _____ ?
3. Jonathan doesn't work in the sales department anymore, _____ ?
4. She worked for one of our competitors before she started working here, _____ ?
5. Nick and Philip have visited a lot of different countries on business trips, _____ ?
6. You would like to join us for lunch in the cafeteria today, _____ ?
7. Jessica didn't go to the strategy meeting we had last Tuesday, _____ ?
8. The boss should be showing the new employees around the office, _____ ?
9. Katrina and John know each other from their days in college, _____ ?
10. He's been waiting for some time to talk to the boss about his promotion, _____ ?
11. James isn't going to be the next head of the Human Resources department, _____ ?
12. Daniel should present the results of his research to the rest of the team, _____ ?
13. You worked with Janet on the project we did in Singapore, _____ ?
14. He works from home two days a week so he can spend time with his family, _____ ?
15. Simon and Gregory are working on a prototype for the new product, _____ ?

02 Action and state verbs

Verbs that describe actions or events are known as "action" or "dynamic" verbs, whereas those that describe states are known as "state" or "stative" verbs.

New language State verbs in continuous forms
Aa Vocabulary Action and state verbs
New skill Describing states

2.1 MARK WHETHER EACH VERB DESCRIBES AN ACTION OR A STATE

I **think** we should go home now.
Action ☐ **State** ☑

1. The train **arrives** in 10 minutes.
   Action ☐ **State** ☐
2. I'll **send** her an email about it.
   Action ☐ **State** ☐
3. This tomato soup **tastes** delicious.
   Action ☐ **State** ☐
4. I **love** hiking in the mountains.
   Action ☐ **State** ☐
5. I **understand** exactly how you feel.
   Action ☐ **State** ☐
6. We're **watching** a film in the living room.
   Action ☐ **State** ☐
7. I **belong** to a sports club in my town.
   Action ☐ **State** ☐
8. They **seem** to be very open and friendly.
   Action ☐ **State** ☐
9. Someone's **knocking** on the door.
   Action ☐ **State** ☐
10. I **spoke** to my parents about it yesterday.
    Action ☐ **State** ☐

2.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Are you having a dictionary? ☐
Do you have a dictionary? ☑

1. She's concentrating hard at the moment. ☐
   She concentrates hard at the moment. ☐
2. I'm hating video games. They're so boring. ☐
   I hate video games. They're so boring. ☐
3. He's wanting to move to a bigger place. ☐
   He wants to move to a bigger place. ☐
4. She is seeming to be a reliable employee. ☐
   She seems to be a reliable employee. ☐
5. He's reading a science-fiction novel. ☐
   He reads a science-fiction novel. ☐
6. I'm just cooking some pasta for dinner. ☐
   I just cook some pasta for dinner. ☐
7. The package is weighing four pounds. ☐
   The package weighs four pounds. ☐
8. I'm not hearing you at all. ☐
   I can't hear you at all. ☐
9. Laura is appearing in the show this evening. ☐
   Laura appearing in the show this evening. ☐
10. What are you thinking of me? ☐
    What do you think of me? ☐

2.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

I was loving pop music when I was a teenager.
I loved pop music when I was a teenager.

1. The items that the bags are containing are heavy.
2. I'm seeing the mountains in the distance.
3. He weighs the boxes on the scales right now.
4. We were spending two hours doing our work.
5. I am believing everything you say.
6. I'm sorry, but I'm feeling that you're wrong.
7. I listened to the radio when you came in.
8. This milk is smelling bad.
9. Shaun is usually arriving at work at 8am.

2.4 SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD, PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE CORRECT TENSE

We're *expecting* **(expect)** some guests for an early dinner this evening.

1. William _____ **(want)** to travel around the world when he's older.
2. I _____ **(taste)** the soup to see if it needs more salt or pepper.
3. I _____ **(see)** my dentist later this afternoon for a consultation.
4. My knees _____ **(hurt)** when I walk too far or sit for too long.
5. My colleagues _____ **(have)** lunch right now in the cafeteria.
6. Michael _____ **(be)** all shy and quiet now that you're here to visit.

03 Using collocations

Collocations are often formed of two words, but can contain more. Using them will make you a more fluent English speaker.

New language Collocations
Aa Vocabulary Beliefs and opinions
New skill Talking about your life

3.1 FILL IN THE GAPS TO COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



All their lives Jim and Alice appeared to be _____*happily married*_____.

1 

Laura _____ straight after school, at the age of 18.

2 

The difference between these two cars is _____.

3 

You've studied so much for the exam. Now all that's left is to _____.

4 

I _____ asking you to pack the passports. Don't tell me you forgot!

5 

I think it's _____ that you'll win the lottery tonight.

6 

I don't think Steffi likes me. She seems to have a _____ of me.

7 

The smell of fresh bread always _____ of my grandma.

8 

Bill made a big mistake at work and it has _____.

9 

I'm very lucky to have a _____. We meet up every Sunday for lunch.

~~happily married~~ clearly visible close family distinctly remember do your best
extremely unlikely low opinion ruined his career stirs up memories went into business

3.2 READ THE ARTICLE AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

ENIGMA FOREVER

Seventy years on, the mystery of Amelia endures

Amelia Earhart, one of the first female aviators, has been missing since 1937. She was attempting a round-the-world flight when, on July 2 1937, her plane disappeared over the Pacific Ocean. Despite a huge search effort, no body or wreckage was ever found.

Opinions are divided as to what happened to Amelia. Jack Berger, an aviation expert, firmly believes that the plane ran out of fuel and crashed into the ocean, where Amelia drowned. Berger's reasonable theory is poles apart from other, more outlandish, explanations. For example, another popular belief is that Amelia ditched her plane on purpose, and went to spy on the Japanese. Even more unlikely is that she completed the round-the-world trip, but didn't want to be in the spotlight anymore, so moved to a small town in the US and changed her name.

It seems extremely unlikely that we will ever know for sure what happened to Amelia. What is not a matter of opinion however, is that Amelia was declared dead in 1939, despite no body ever being found.



A LOCKHEED VEGA SIMILAR TO THE ONE FLOWN BY AMELIA EARHART

Not many women had flown a plane in 1937.
True ☑ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

1 Amelia's plane disappeared over water.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

2 Amelia's plane was found.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

3 Jack Berger has written a book about Amelia.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

4 Berger's theory seems reasonable.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

5 Amelia could speak fluent Japanese.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

6 Some people believe Amelia is still alive.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

7 A woman with Amelia's name lives in the US.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

8 Experts are close to solving the mystery.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

9 Officially, Amelia has been dead since 1939.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

3.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

born | small | Jenni | in | Spain. | town | in | was | a

Jenni was born in a small town in Spain.

1. while | in | was | I | met | wife | college. | my | I

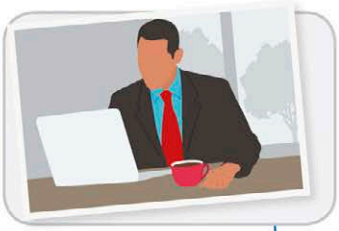
2. climbing | When | was | trees. | young, | I | loved | I

3. I | After | to | moved | retired, | I | Florida.

4. in | café. | I | worked | During | summer | the | a

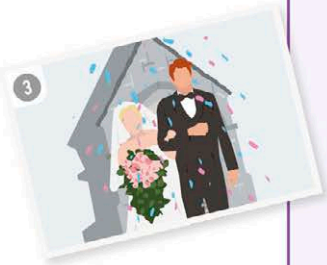
5. was | part-time. | I | worked | studying | I | while | abroad.

3.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MATCH THE IMAGES OF THE EVENTS TO THE CORRECT TIME









23 years ago | This morning | 25 years ago | 15 years ago

3.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

I think Adrian ~~was having~~ / had an interview for a new job this afternoon / ~~every afternoon~~.

1. Stephanie **has graduated** / **graduated** from college with an honors degree **last** / **before** year.
2. Bill **had been running** / **was running** for many years when he **decided** / **has decided** to run a marathon.
3. Matthew **was starting** / **started** working at the company 33 years **since** / **ago**.
4. Leah **was having** / **had** a baby **previous** / **last** month. Her name's Sophie and she's beautiful.
5. Peter **arrived** / **has arrived** very early **this** / **previous** morning because he has an important meeting.
6. Jenny **was working** / **worked** in a bar in London when she **has met** / **met** Stephen.
7. Jenny and Stephen **were getting married** / **got married** this year **on** / **in** June 7.
8. Stuart **had been living** / **has lived** in the US **since** / **for** 10 years before he moved to the UK.
9. When they **were** / **had been** five years old, Anna and Jasmine **were** / **have been** best friends.

3.6 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

I firmly believe	that there is someone for everyone.
1 Whether too much sleep is bad for you	it's extremely unlikely we'll fly today.
2 There is a popular belief that	such a low opinion of me.
3 Lionel has gone into business,	selling clothes he has designed himself.
4 There's forecast to be light rain later on,	so take an umbrella.
5 When I smelled that perfume, it stirred	up memories of my first love.
6 The airport is still closed, so	her career in athletics.
7 I'm not sure why Rebecca has	the number 13 is unlucky.
8 The scandal over drug-taking ruined	is a matter of opinion.

04 Complex descriptions

When you describe something using more than one adjective, the adjectives usually have to go in a specific order. There are several categories of adjectives.

New language General and specific adjectives
Aa Vocabulary Personalities
New skill Ordering adjectives

4.1 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

That looks like a new interesting movie. We should go to see it.
That looks like an interesting new movie. We should go to see it.

1. She's a little intelligent girl. She always does well at school.

2. It's a old, horrible ugly car. I'm not going to buy it as I don't like it.

3. We're going on a cheap, fantastic train trip across Europe for our vacation.

4. This is such an old comfortable sweater. I love wearing it in winter.

5. Gio always wears Italian stylish clothes. He is a fashion designer in London.

6. Today we're going to present our new innovative tablet to you for the first time.

7. Don't forget to try these spicy delicious sauces, which we've created ourselves.

8. I was one of the first to ride in a high-speed unique train while I was there.

9. Sometimes a low-tech reliable product is a better option than a more hi-tech one.

Aa 4.2 FIND EIGHT OPINION ADJECTIVES IN THE GRID AND WRITE THEM UNDER THE CORRECT HEADING

U	R	I	T	T	N	A	T	E	E	I	L	F
F	E	U	N	A	D	W	S	V	L	A	P	K
L	S	Y	R	S	T	F	T	D	E	S	A	D
M	X	R	D	T	E	U	I	L	X	Z	N	L
N	O	A	S	Y	E	L	B	Z	C	P	G	O
E	B	S	S	E	T	U	G	L	Y	K	L	V
N	B	S	S	I	R	I	I	T	T	I	U	E
R	I	G	A	R	L	X	I	Y	I	T	G	L
R	D	C	O	N	F	K	I	N	D	W	M	Y
R	N	H	E	T	P	D	A	O	G	E	Y	R

GENERAL OPINION

nice

SPECIFIC OPINION

kind

4.3 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE ADJECTIVES IN THE CORRECT ORDER

uncomfortable wooden horrible

It's a horrible , uncomfortable wooden chair.

old wonderful generous

1 My grandma is a _____ , _____ _____ lady.

ugly awful expensive

2 I bought this _____ , _____ _____ dress on the internet.

pleasant young friendly

3 What a _____ , _____ _____ man Peter is!

stylish beautiful new

4 Jon's got a _____ , _____ _____ car.

4.4 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PREFIXES IN THE PANEL

Tom was very rude and __un__ friendly toward my friends.

1. Lana's _____ honest. She hides information and never tells the truth.
2. You're so _____ considerate! Think about other people for a change!
3. It was very _____ kind of you to make your sister cry. You should apologize to her.
4. Leon always has a solution for a problem. Unfortunately, he's often _____ correct.
5. Susanne is always being rude to her parents. She's so _____ respectful.
6. Stop behaving like a five-year-old! You're so _____ mature!

in dis ~~un~~ dis in im un

4.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS



Richard and Jenni are talking about filling a job vacancy in their company.

Jenni thinks the person they choose must be...

- **blunt** ☐
- **fair-minded** ☐
- **resourceful** ☑

1. The person they choose must not be...
   - **rude** ☐
   - **inexperienced** ☐
   - **mature** ☐
2. Richard thinks Sonia is reliable, but also...
   - **lazy** ☐
   - **efficient** ☐
   - **arrogant** ☐
3. The person that Richard is considering is...
   - **Anna** ☐
   - **Esther** ☐
   - **Mary** ☐
4. Esther has been working with the company for...
   - **five years** ☐
   - **six years** ☐
   - **seven years** ☐
5. Jenni thinks Esther is...
   - **trustworthy** ☐
   - **arrogant** ☐
   - **popular** ☐

4.6 READ THE PERFORMANCE REVIEW AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS AS FULL SENTENCES



Name: Jenson Lee
Position: Website administrator
Subject: Performance Review

Jenson joined the company just over a year ago. He appeared rather quiet to begin with, but has proved himself to be hardworking and proactive. For example, in June the company website crashed while May Wong, Jenson's boss, was on vacation. Jenson took charge of the situation and sought help from others on the team. He was incredibly organized, and thanks to his excellent planning, the website was back online within six hours. Jenson is also clearly ambitious, and he has expressed a desire to be promoted into management.

Because Jenson is so shy, some people think he is unfriendly and insensitive. We discussed this and he agreed he sometimes feels uncomfortable in social situations. We will look for training courses that will help him with this. Jenson needs to improve his social skills before he can be considered for promotion.

When Jenson first started working for the company, what was his personality like?
Jenson was very quiet when he first started working for the company.

1. How did Jenson solve the problem with the website?

2. What are Jenson's hopes for his future career?

3. Why might Jenson sometimes appear rude?

4. What solution has Jenson's company come up with to help him overcome his shyness?

5. How can Jenson improve his chances of getting promoted?

6. Would you say the review is generally positive or negative?

05 Making general statements

It is very useful to know how to start sentences with the word "it" in English. You can use "it is" at the beginning of a sentence to make a general statement about something.

New language Introductory "it"
Aa Vocabulary Talents and abilities
New skill Expressing general truths

5.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL

It is *not important that* we lost the first game. You should forget about that.

1. It's _____ some people aren't interested in learning languages.
2. It's _____ you chose that book because it's the book that I chose, too.
3. It's _____ win. What you should be focused on is doing your very best.
4. It is _____ learn English vocabulary, but it's difficult to learn the grammar.
5. It's _____ our neighbors are so understanding because we make a lot of noise!
6. When it's so cold outside, it's _____ wrap yourself up as warmly as possible.
7. It's _____ everyone has enough water to drink while we're out walking in the heat.
8. It's _____ look at your phone while you're driving. You could have an accident.
9. Joshua has been doing so badly at school that he's _____ do well in his exams.
10. It is _____ understand people when they speak English very quickly.
11. Look at those black clouds over there. I think it's _____ rain sometime soon.
12. Our train is so delayed. I think it's _____ we'll get home before midnight!
13. It's really _____ some people don't care about the environment. They should!
14. It's _____ our children do their best at school and get a good education.
15. It's _____ have all of the family here together again. I've missed everyone.

interesting that | important to | important that | not important to | essential that
difficult to | unlikely that | unlikely to | likely to | bad that | bad to
good that | good to | easy to | ~~not important that~~ | a shame that

5.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



To / ~~**That**~~ / ~~**It**~~ get to the school, go straight ahead and then turn left.

1. 
That / **To** / **It** is unlikely that I will finish this assignment on time.

2. 
It's difficult **that** / **to** / **it** decide what to order because it all sounds delicious.

3. 
That / **To** / **Them** lose at this point would be very difficult after coming so far.

4. 
It's easy **that** / **to** / **they** start writing an essay, but it's not always easy to finish one!

5. 
It's essential **that** / **to** / **they** everyone follows the rules and does what they're told.

6. 
That / **To** / **They** read English is easy, but to write in English is more difficult.

7. 
It's important **that** / **to** / **it** choose an interesting topic to give a presentation about.

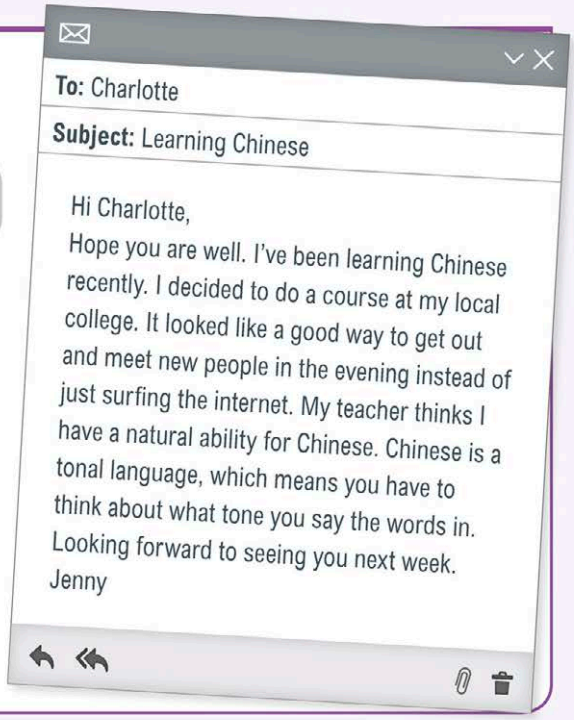
5.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	My brother surprised us with his	to plan ahead. He's always late!
1	I have a certain aptitude for	navigating with a map, but I still get lost.
2	My friend has a complete inability	to memorize huge passages of text.
3	It seems like some people have a	hidden talent for baking cakes.
4	Dr. Finn had a remarkable capacity	natural ability to run long distances.

5.4 READ THE EMAIL AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

Which language has Jenny been learning recently?
Japanese ☐ **Arabic** ☐ **Chinese** ☑

1. Where is Jenny learning it?
   At a school ☐ **At a college** ☐ **At a university** ☐
2. It will help her do less of what in the evening?
   Shopping ☐ **Housework** ☐ **Surfing the internet** ☐
3. What kind of ability does Jenny have for Chinese?
   Natural ☐ **Limited** ☐ **Advanced** ☐
4. How does Jenny describe the language she's learning?
   Tonal ☐ **Clicking** ☐ **Difficult** ☐


To: Charlotte

Subject: Learning Chinese

Hi Charlotte,
Hope you are well. I've been learning Chinese recently. I decided to do a course at my local college. It looked like a good way to get out and meet new people in the evening instead of just surfing the internet. My teacher thinks I have a natural ability for Chinese. Chinese is a tonal language, which means you have to think about what tone you say the words in.
Looking forward to seeing you next week.
Jenny

5.5 RESPOND OUT LOUD TO THE AUDIO, FILLING IN THE GAPS IN THE ANSWERS

Do you like learning new languages?

Yes, I think _____ *they help you communicate with more people.* _____

1. Why do so many people want to learn English?

   Because it's important _____
2. Will English be a popular language in the future?

   I think English is likely _____
3. Describe your ability to learn languages.

   I think I have _____
4. What makes learning English difficult?

   It's difficult _____

06 Vocabulary

Aa 6.1 TRAVEL AND TOURISM WRITE THE PHRASES FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

A vacation, particularly a short one



getaway

1. Unique and unrepeatable



2. A desire for exciting experiences



3. Pay your bill and leave a hotel



4. Visit interesting buildings and places as a tourist



5. Totally unable to find your way



6. Go to the station or airport to say goodbye to someone



7. A stage in a journey from one place to another



8. Explore an area or place



9. Register your arrival at an airport or hotel



10. Be sad because you miss your home and family



11. Feeling of confusion or distress when visiting a different place or culture



12. Go somewhere relaxing for a break



13. Pause a journey in one place before continuing



culture shock | check out | thirst for adventure | get away from it all

~~getaway~~ | check in | leg of a journey | once-in-a-lifetime | see somebody off

go sightseeing | feel homesick | look around | hopelessly lost | stop off

07 Phrasal verbs

Phrasal verbs occur in many different forms. They have two or more parts, which are sometimes separable. They are very common, especially in spoken English.

New language Phrasal verbs overview
Aa Vocabulary Travel
New skill Using complex phrasal verbs

7.1 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

all | It | on | raining | kept | night.

It kept on raining all night.

1. get | at | I | up | 7am. | usually

2. would | in | early. | like | to | check | I

3. out | need | by | I | to | check | 9am.

4. works | two | He | hours. | out | for

5. Fridays. | We | go | always | out | on

6. up | in. | Please | go | line | here | to

7. the | Martin | showed | at | party. | up

7.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

This is where you have to line up. ☑
This is where you have to lines up. ☐

1. They want to check in at the hotel. ☐
   They want to check up at the hotel. ☐
2. He keeps on complaining about his job. ☐
   He keeps complaining on about his job. ☐
3. She doesn't like getting up early. ☐
   She doesn't like getting on early. ☐
4. She works down in the morning. ☐
   She works out in the morning. ☐
5. We're going for Sheila's birthday out. ☐
   We're going out for Sheila's birthday. ☐
6. He shows up late to work yesterday. ☐
   He showed up late to work yesterday. ☐
7. Jo, please come in and join us here. ☐
   Jo, please come into and join us here. ☐
8. Tim is coming down for my birthday. ☐
   Tim is coming under for my birthday. ☐
9. Cooking is hard, but you should keep it at. ☐
   Cooking is hard, but you should keep at it. ☐
10. He always checks down early. ☐
    He always checks out early. ☐

7.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, SEPARATING THE PHRASAL VERBS

We seem to throw away too much food. We should buy less when we go to the supermarket.
We seem to throw too much food away. We should buy less when we go to the supermarket.

1. She really needs to clean up her desk. It's full of papers and old coffee cups.

2. The sixth grade students are putting on a show to celebrate the end of their time at this school.

3. Everyone needs to hand in their forms by Friday. Otherwise you can't go on the trip.

4. I need you to look up a few words in the dictionary for me. Can you do that?

5. I'll check out the hotels in Monte Carlo and let you know what the prices are.

7.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES USING PRONOUNS

We're getting a new gymnasium at school. They're putting the building up this year.
We're getting a new gymnasium at school. They're putting it up this year.

1. It's not a problem. We'll come over and pick up the sofa from your place.

2. He was so angry he tore up the contract and threw the pieces around the room.

3. You should put on that pullover when you go outside. It's absolutely freezing.

4. If you cut out that coupon, you can use it to get two for the price of one at the supermarket.

7.5 SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD, FILLING IN THE GAPS

TIP
Remember that when you're saying a three-part phrasal verb, you need to stress the second word.

I'm lucky that I *get along with* all of my colleagues really well.

1. He's always trying to _____ his reputation as a big spender.
2. We're _____ some really good ideas at the moment.
3. I should just _____ the things that I don't need.
4. She's so fast. I can't _____ her.
5. Melissa's great. I really _____ her.

get rid of
coming up with
live up to
keep up with
look up to
~~get along with~~

7.6 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE CORRECT TENSES



We're moving, so I'm *getting rid of* (get rid of) anything I don't need.

1. 
We all went to the airport with John and _____ (see off).

2. 
Her plane _____ (take off) at 9:20am, so she should land at 2:50pm.

3. 
He always _____ (stop off) to see his mother on his way home from work.

4. 
Hi Jonathan, it's me again. I'm sorry we were _____ (cut off) just now.

5. 
The traffic was so bad that we _____ (set off) at 9 o'clock and didn't arrive until 12.

6. 
I'm worried about my new dog. I don't think he _____ (get along with) Buster.

7.7 READ THE ARTICLE AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

TEAM-BUILDING UPDATE

A trip to Salzburg

How a weekend in the mountains brought a team together

Last year our boss, Robert, suggested we go on a team-building trip to help us get along with each other better. Robert said we needed to keep up with other companies and live up to our reputation as an efficient company. We set off early one morning and our plane to Salzburg took off at 8am. When we landed, someone from our hotel came to pick us up. As soon as we arrived we had to put some extra layers on because it was freezing cold.

We went climbing in the mountains and at one point, I got cut off from the others. Luckily Sebastian, our guide, called out to me and I found the group again. Sebastian said we needed to get rid of our inhibitions and just climb. At the end of the weekend, we all agreed that the trip had been enjoyable and we even came up with some ideas for a new sales campaign!



They went on the team-building trip this year. True ☐ False ☑ Not given ☐

1. Their boss suggested the team-building trip. True ☐ False ☐ Not given ☐
2. The aim of the trip was to improve team relationships. True ☐ False ☐ Not given ☐
3. Other people don't see the company as being efficient. True ☐ False ☐ Not given ☐
4. The team flew from London Heathrow airport. True ☐ False ☐ Not given ☐
5. Their plane arrived in Salzburg at 8am. True ☐ False ☐ Not given ☐
6. The team took the bus to the hotel in Salzburg. True ☐ False ☐ Not given ☐
7. The team discovered they weren't dressed warmly enough. True ☐ False ☐ Not given ☐
8. The writer lost the group and couldn't find them again. True ☐ False ☐ Not given ☐
9. Sebastian encouraged the group to feel inhibited. True ☐ False ☐ Not given ☐
10. The team thought of some new ideas while on the trip. True ☐ False ☐ Not given ☐

08 Narrative tenses

When telling a story, even if you're just talking about something that happened recently, you need to use a variety of tenses so that the story can be understood easily.

New language The past perfect continuous
Aa Vocabulary Travel adjectives and idioms
New skill Talking about a variety of past actions

8.1 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE PAST SIMPLE OR PAST CONTINUOUS



We *decided* **(decide)** to order a bottle of wine while we *were having* **(have)** dinner.

1 

I _____ **(learn)** a lot of Japanese while I _____ **(live)** in Japan.

2 

While I _____ **(wait)** for the train, I _____ **(meet)** my favorite singer.

3 

As we _____ **(walk)** home last night, we _____ **(see)** a firework display.

4 

We _____ **(stop)** at the café while we _____ **(visit)** the castle.

5 

I _____ **(get)** off my bike a few times while I _____ **(cycle)** to work.

6 

I _____ **(see)** a lot of cafés when I _____ **(stroll)** around town.

7 

While I _____ **(wander)** around, I _____ **(find)** a good bookstore.

8 

She _____ **(take)** so many pictures when she _____ **(travel)**.

9 

I _____ **(have)** problems with my car until he _____ **(help)** me.



8.2 COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PAST PERFECT, SPEAKING OUT LOUD

They **decided** to travel around the country, so they rented a car at the airport.

They rented a car at the airport because *they had decided to travel around the country.*

1. The hotel receptionist **recommended** a local restaurant to us, so we tried it.

   We tried a local restaurant because _____

2. I **went** in the swimming pool at the hotel and then I went in the sauna.

   I went in the sauna after I _____

3. A friend of ours **said** it was a good idea to rent a bike, so we did.

   We rented a bike because _____

4. Just after we **arrived** at the hotel, they gave us a welcome drink.

   They gave us a welcome drink just after _____

5. We **bought** advance tickets, so didn't have to wait in line to go into the museum.

   We didn't have to wait in line to go in because _____

8.3 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE BRACKETS INTO THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

They *had been walking* **(walk)** around Rome for two hours before they found the restaurant.

1. The Miller family _____ **(go)** to Croatia for years before it became popular with tourists.
2. We needed to move around after we _____ **(sit)** on the plane for 14 hours.
3. I _____ **(wait)** for them at the airport for half an hour before they arrived.
4. Our team _____ **(lose)** in the first half of the game, but they came back in the second.
5. She _____ **(study)** Spanish for six months before she went to Mexico.
6. It _____ **(rain)** for five days in a row before we had some sunshine.

8.4 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT TENSE

We *had been waiting* in line for an hour before we *were able to* buy our train tickets.

1. She _____ to cycle across China, but then she _____ an accident on her bike.
2. When they _____ back home, they discovered that someone _____ their house.
3. After I _____ around Asia for six months, I _____ very happy to be back home.
4. Before I _____ to South America, I _____ tango dancing.
5. He _____ to visit the fjords because he _____ they were beautiful.

go want ~~be able to~~ travel not try get
plan hear feel burgle have ~~wait~~

8.5 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	After I left home, I realized	I realized that someone had stolen my car.
1	I had written some practice answers	but they decided to go to bed early.
2	When I got back to the parking lot,	been working in the US for six months.
3	Before I started working here, I had	that I had forgotten my umbrella.
4	I had given the matter a lot of thought	before I decided to change jobs.
5	They were eating at a restaurant when	I had not been sleeping very well.
6	She wanted to go to Spain because	her parents had told her it was fantastic.
7	They had been planning to go out,	a famous author came in.
8	I was feeling extremely tired because	before the exam, so I was well prepared.

8.6 READ THE ARTICLE AND WRITE ANSWERS TO THE QUESTIONS AS FULL SENTENCES

TRUE STORIES

An unusual friendship

Two strangers became friends without even knowing each other's names

Jason works in an office in New York. One Monday morning, he looked out of the window and saw a woman working in the building across the street. To his surprise, she smiled and waved. Jason had moved to New York a few months earlier. Before that, he had been doing an internship in London, and he was certain he and the woman in the window had never met.

A few days later, Jason saw the woman again. This time she was holding up a piece of paper with the word "hi" written on it. Jason found a piece of paper and wrote "hi" back. From that day on, they sent regular messages using pieces of paper, without ever meeting face-to-face. Finally, some weeks later, the mystery woman wrote: "Do you want to meet for coffee?" Jason wrote back: "Yes, sure."

Their unusual meeting had led to a genuine friendship, which has lasted many years.



When did Jason first see the woman in the office building across the street?

Jason first saw the woman on a Monday morning.

1. How long had Jason been living in New York at the time?

2. What had Jason been doing before he moved to New York?

3. How long was it before Jason saw the woman a second time?

4. Who was the first person to start writing messages?

09 Giving advice and opinions

When you want to give advice or make recommendations, you can use a variety of modal verbs. You can vary the strength of your advice by using different modals.

New language Modals for advice and opinion
Aa Vocabulary Recommendations
New skill Giving advice and opinions

9.1 MARK ALL THE RECOMMENDATIONS

It's difficult to find a hotel in the center of Paris that isn't really expensive.



You could try the Hôtel du Théâtre. It's quite cheap. ☑

1 When you're in Berlin, you ought to visit the television tower.



Oh yes. I heard there are some great views from the top.

2 It's so hot today, I can't believe it!



I know! You really should take the kids down to the swimming pool.

3 You might want to take a boat trip around the lake while you're here.



That sounds like a good idea. We couldn't do that last time.

4 Jonas could make a reservation. Then he'll definitely get a seat on the train.



You're right. I'll tell him to do that.

5 We could go to visit the Great Wall on our third day in Beijing.



Yes, it's awesome. You really must do that.

9.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE REVIEW THAT MOST CLOSELY MATCHES CHARLOTTE'S OPINION



1 Charlotte liked the restaurant's location by the canal and thought the food was very fresh. ☐

2 Charlotte thought the restaurant was noisy and the service was bad. ☐

3 Charlotte didn't like the inside of the restaurant and thought the food wasn't very fresh. ☐

9.3 FILL IN THE GAPS WITH THE RECOMMENDATIONS FROM THE PANEL



The science museum is a lot of fun for all the family!

You really should take your kids there soon.



We can't praise our tour guide enough. She gave us such a lot of interesting information.

3 _____



We had some outstanding food at Lionel's restaurant!

1 _____



I had trouble sleeping because the sheets were very rough.

4 _____



The room wasn't bad, although ours was a lot smaller than some of the others.

2 _____



The staff at the bar had fantastic recommendations for drinks.

5 _____

You might want to bring a sheet! — You could ask for a larger room if this is an issue.

You really must try the cocktails. — ~~You really should take your kids there soon.~~

You must ask for Irene if you go there. — You ought to try the pasta.

9.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK WHETHER VICTOR LIKED OR DISLIKED EACH ACTIVITY











9.5 SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD, CHOOSING THE CORRECT WORDS

You **should** / ~~**had better**~~ take some photographs when you get to the top of the tower.

1. You **must** / **could** put on a lot of sun cream or you'll burn.
2. You **could** / **had better** take your walking boots if you're going to go hiking while you're there.
3. The firework display will be absolutely stunning. You **would** / **must** go and see it.
4. If I were you, I **would** / **could** take the train from Paris to London instead of flying.
5. You **would** / **should** ask if they have any vacancies at the Hotel Bennetton.

9.6 READ THE EMAIL AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

Severine went on vacation to...
France ☐ **South Africa** ☑ **Belgium** ☐

1. Severine recommends traveling around by...
   car ☐ **bus** ☐ **plane** ☐
2. Severine recommends taking a lot of...
   cameras ☐ **photographs** ☐ **videos** ☐
3. Severine advises locking your...
   car doors ☐ **trunk** ☐ **car windows** ☐
4. Severine recommends trying a South African...
   safari ☐ **car** ☐ **dish** ☐
5. Severine wants to show Tim her...
   photographs ☐ **camera** ☐ **South African dishes** ☐

To: Tim

Subject: Our trip!

Hi Tim,
Robert and I have just come back to Belgium after our trip to South Africa! We flew from Paris to Cape Town and took a bus along the coast. If I were you, I'd rent a car when you come. You ought to take a good camera with you, so you can take lots of photos because there are animals everywhere. Some of them can be dangerous, so you'd better keep your car doors locked! The food was also great. You should try bobotie, a typical South African dish. You should come over some time so we can show you all our photos.
Best wishes,
Severine

9.7 WRITE A LETTER RECOMMENDING A TRIP USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL

Hi Jake!

How are you? It's been a long time since I sent you a letter, so I thought I would tell you about our family trip to Paris.



We went to	I really enjoyed the	You ought to	You'd better
If I were you, I'd	Best wishes	You must	The highlight for me was

10 Making predictions

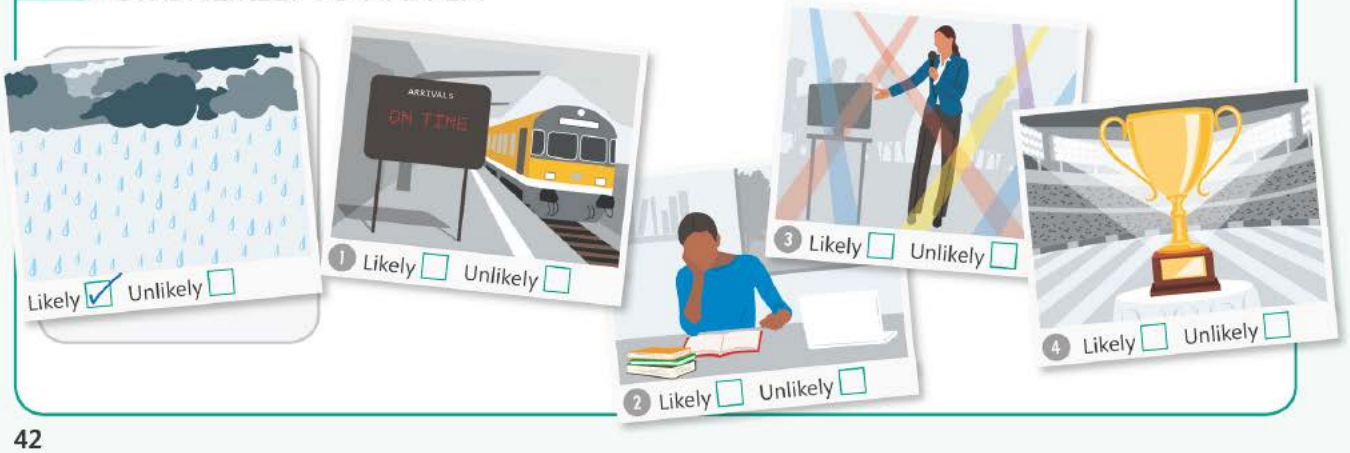
When you talk about a future event, you might need to say how likely it is that the event will happen. There are a number of ways that you can do this.

New language Degrees of likelihood
Aa Vocabulary Idioms about time
New skill Talking about possibilities

10.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	If you get to the pool at 8am,	by the end of June after all.
1	The plane is two hours late now,	because he's a vegetarian.
2	Sadly, the project won't be finished	I don't think he has my phone number.
3	We might have time to visit the spa	you'll probably find a sunbed to lie on.
4	Ask the rep from the travel agency, as	we will wait for you in the arrivals hall.
5	He definitely won't be trying beef	so we will miss our connecting flight.
6	It's unlikely that he will call, as	there isn't a cloud in the sky today.
7	When we arrive at the airport,	she will probably know the answer.
8	It's very unlikely that it will rain, since	if we leave now and we hurry up.

10.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK WHETHER EACH ACTIVITY IS LIKELY OR UNLIKELY TO HAPPEN



10.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE

He looked **surprisingly** / ~~**fortunately**~~ good in his suit and tie at the wedding.

1. The internet has **fundamentally** / **essentially** changed how we book our vacations.
2. **Luckily** / **Fundamentally**, we had nice weather every day when we were on vacation.
3. **Unfortunately** / **Essentially**, Emma was sick when we were on vacation.
4. The trip home was **surprisingly** / **predictably** slow. There are always problems on that route.
5. They make their pancakes in **luckily** / **essentially** the same way that we do.
6. **Interestingly** / **Predictably**, Winston Churchill had stayed at our hotel when he was in the region.
7. **Unfortunately** / **Fortunately**, we were fit enough to be able to hike back down the coast.

10.4 SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD, FILLING IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

Fundamentally, this is an absolutely awful hotel and I would advise you not to stay here.

1. _____, we made it to the hotel before the reception closed for the night.
2. Windsurfing is _____ sailing with a surfboard.
3. _____, the hotel is completely booked up.
4. _____, the café was also an art gallery.
5. _____, Richard actually went in the pool. You know how he normally hates water.
6. _____, Donald got sunburned again. He never puts any sun tan lotion on.

~~Fundamentally~~ essentially Surprisingly Predictably Unfortunately Luckily Interestingly

10.5 READ THE ARTICLE AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

CITY TO GET MEGA-MALL

Authorities announce plans to build new mega-mall in Graysonville

The local authorities have announced plans to build a new mega-mall in Graysonville. Spokesman William Peters said mega-malls are the shape of things to come and it was only a matter of time before Graysonville built one. Interestingly, the mayor of Graysonville rejected plans to build a mega-mall 10 years ago, but now he's saying that it's essentially a very positive step forward for the town. In the short-term, there's probably going to be construction work going on for the next two years. Luckily, the construction company can use the plans that were drawn up 10 years ago.

The mayor will probably make a statement to explain why the mall will be built, when this had seemed so unlikely. In the long-term, the new development means that Graysonville residents won't have to go out of town to shop because they'll have everything they need right here.



A large new mall is going to be built in Graysonville.	True ☑	False ☐	Not given ☐
1 The mall will contain over 200 shops.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
2 The spokesman thinks malls are the future of shopping.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
3 He also said it was inevitable one would be built in Graysonville.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
4 The mayor agreed to plans to build a mall 10 years ago.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
5 It's unlikely that construction work will go on for two years.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
6 It's a good thing that the old plans can be used.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
7 There's a good chance the mayor will make a statement.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
8 Graysonville residents will no longer shop in Buntstown.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
9 Residents will have all the shops they need in their city.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐

11 Vocabulary

Aa 11.1 FAMILY AND RELATIONSHIPS WRITE THE PHRASES FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

Share an interest or opinion



have something in common

1. Develop from a child to an adult



2. Be a common feature of a family



3. Speak out in support of somebody



4. Agree with or have similar opinions to somebody



5. Become friendly with a person



6. Like somebody quickly and easily



7. Have a child



8. Slowly become less friendly or close to somebody



9. Meet someone unexpectedly



10. Be strict about something



11. Have respect and admiration for someone



12. A friend who you know very well



13. End a romantic relationship



put your foot down | make friends with somebody | give birth | close friend | run in the family
break up with somebody | grow up | drift apart | bump into somebody | have something in common
look up to somebody | stick up for somebody | click with somebody | see eye to eye with somebody

12 Using discourse markers

Discourse markers can be used to show a relationship between two sentences, or parts of a sentence. This can be cause, effect, emphasis, contrast, or comparison.

New language Linking information
Aa Vocabulary Family history
New skill Talking about relationships

12.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	I call my mother when I arrive at work,	particularly chess.
1	I have bright blue eyes	especially my brother, who's a scientist.
2	We live in different countries,	as a result, he always gets socks!
3	My siblings are all very intelligent,	so she knows I got there safely.
4	My dad loves to play board games,	because we're all so busy now.
5	They like different TV channels	so he always makes dinner for us.
6	We can video chat with each other	like my mother.
7	She is interested in my life at college	especially when they all get together.
8	I enjoy going fishing	just as we used to do when we were kids.
9	My father is a great cook,	but we all get together at Christmas.
10	We only see each other once a month	because she wasn't able to go.
11	It's hard to buy a present for dad and,	since we all have smartphones or laptops.
12	We cook something different for her	so they watch them in different rooms.
13	My relatives all talk a lot,	though my family doesn't eat it often.
14	Ann and I still stay up late chatting	just as my father does. He's great at it.
15	I love cooking Chinese food,	as she's a vegetarian.

12.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

I always call my mother when I have a problem **because** / ~~**though**~~ she gives me good advice.



1. My brother loves sports, **especially** / **but** ice hockey.



2. Our family usually goes to Greece on vacation, **since** / **though** last year we went to Turkey.



3. My brother got great grades at school, **so** / **particularly** he studied at a good university.



4. My dad works in the garden every day **though** / **as** he has a lot of free time after retiring.



5. My mother loves cats **just as** / **but** my grandmother did.



6. My sister loves music, **since** / **particularly** rock and pop bands.



7. My mother's always wanted to go to Paris, **like** / **so** we organized a trip for her 50th birthday.



8. We do sometimes argue with each other, **since** / **but** we never stay angry at each other for long.



9. My two younger brothers are very close **but** / **as** they shared a room when they were growing up.



10. My family isn't very big **like** / **since** my husband's.



11. We will have a big family gathering this year **as** / **especially** all my cousins will be here.



12. Sonya is a talented painter **just as** / **as a result** her grandmother was.



13. All my relatives are good singers, **though** / **particularly** my aunt.



12.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	Alice was equally interested in	she decided to look at family records online.
1	She searched for her mother's last name	notably one who was an army general.
2	As a result of a friend's recommendation,	finding out more about her mother's side.
3	Her mother had many fascinating ancestors,	the history of her parents' families.
4	Whereas her mother's side was interesting,	other ancestors of hers were very interesting.
5	Therefore, she decided to concentrate on	she felt more connected to her family.
6	As well as the army general,	online, yet she didn't find anything helpful.
7	As a result of her research,	her father's ancestors were all dull.

12.4 CHOOSE THE MOST APPROPRIATE DISCOURSE MARKERS, THEN SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD

I love visiting the United States, ~~**notably**~~ / **especially** Florida.

1. **Due to** / **Whereas** the delay to our flight from Atlanta, we missed our connecting flight.
2. It was raining heavily, **therefore** / **so** we decided to cancel the barbecue.
3. My mother is always late, **so** / **but** my father is always on time.
4. Ronald Tuft received a number of awards, **notably** / **especially** the Victoria Cross.
5. Her early work is very radical and her later work is **equally** / **whereas** innovative.
6. Hotels have to be careful **owing to** / **since** it's easy for guests to write bad reviews nowadays.

12.5 READ THE ARTICLE AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

GENEALOGY

Top tips for researching your family

Start by talking to your family about their memories, particularly your grandparents or older family members. Remember that they won't be around forever, so it's a good idea to record anything they tell you.

Look at any documents your family has kept. These can give important information about births, marriages, and deaths.

Censuses primarily contain information about people's ages and addresses, but they can also tell you the occupations of your ancestors.

Write down any information you find out. Make copies of family documents and keep them together with this information.

You might think family history research is something you do alone, but this doesn't have to be the case. Why not join a local family history society where you can share tips with others?

The article gives advice on how to research your family history.
True ☑ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

1. Don't talk to your grandparents because they can't remember anything.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

2. It's a good idea to record what your family tells you.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

3. Some types of family documents are more helpful than others.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

4. Family documents can tell you when your ancestors married and died.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

5. Censuses can tell you what jobs your ancestors did.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

6. Don't make copies of old documents because that can damage them.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

7. You have to do family history research alone.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

8. Social media can help you find out where your nearest family history society is.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

13 Past habits and states

When you talk about habits or states in the past, you can use "used to" or "would." English often uses these forms to contrast the past with the present.

New language "Used to" and "would"
Aa Vocabulary Family values
New skill Contrasting the past with the present

13.1 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

We didn't used to have the internet at work.
We didn't use to have the internet at work.



1. When I was young, we would visited our grandparents every weekend.



2. I didn't used to like olives. Now I love them!



3. Did they used to have a car?



4. In the summer break, we would to spend all day at the beach if it was sunny.



5. We use to live in an apartment in Milwaukee before we moved to Chicago.



6. When I was a student, I look would for special offers to save money.



7. In my old job, I would listened to customers' complaints all day long.



8. Did use you to play soccer?



9. When I was very young, I would eat not any vegetables.



10. At school, my best friend was Leo. We used do everything together.



11. My brother didn't use like to swimming. Now he loves it.

13.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

When I was a kid, I used to hate doing homework. I would always hand it in late. ☑
When I was a kid, I use to hate doing homework. I would always hand it in late. ☐

1. Did you use to have a computer at home when you were a child? ☐
   Did you used to have a computer at home when you were a child? ☐
2. I worked in Paris from 2005 to 2009. ☐
   I used to work in Paris from 2005 to 2009. ☐
3. Liam would go to Los Angeles twice. ☐
   Liam has been to Los Angeles twice. ☐
4. We didn't used to have to wear a school uniform at my school. ☐
   We didn't use to have to wear a school uniform at my school. ☐
5. I used to ride a bicycle to school every day, even in the rain. ☐
   I use to ride a bicycle to school every day, even in the rain. ☐

13.3 REWRITE THE HIGHLIGHTED PHRASES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

used to live

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____

BEACH LIFE

When I was 17, I got my first summer job. I worked at the beach near where I use to live. I would got up at 6am and I would cycling to the beach. Then I used spend an hour putting out sunbeds and umbrellas. For 12 hours a day, I would got money off the people who used them. I use to moan about my job endlessly. I used complain that I was tired, I was bored, it was hot...
Then one day, I had a revelation. I realized how lucky I really was working outdoors in the sunshine on the beach. I never use to complain after that!

13.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS



Jack and his mother are discussing the benefits of the internet.

The woman has been doing online shopping.
True ☑ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

1. She has bought her husband a new phone.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

2. She thinks things were better before the internet.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

3. Shopping took longer before the internet.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

4. Products on the internet are cheaper.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

5. She never had contact with her relatives before.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

13.5 LISTEN AGAIN AND MARK THE MOST ACCURATE SUMMARY

1. The son thinks the internet is a positive development, but his mom disagrees. ☐
2. The mother does not agree with most of her relatives about the internet. ☐
3. The mother has a positive attitude toward the benefits of the internet. ☐
4. The mother and son both prefer shopping online to shopping at the mall. ☐

13.6 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

Please don't _interrupt_ me. I'm trying to make an important point.

1. Janine has similar _____ to us. She loves animals and she's a vegetarian.
2. Your dog is so _____ ! He's eaten a bowl of food and still wants more.
3. I take _____ very seriously. I can't employ people who lie to me.
4. These days there is greater _____ of people with differing points of view.
5. The best thing about Philip's _____ is that he is so kind.

acceptance | character | greedy | honesty | ~~interrupt~~ | values

13.7 CORRECT THE ERRORS IN THE SENTENCES, THEN SAY THEM OUT LOUD

We used go the movie theater every weekend when I was a kid.

We used to go to the movie theater every weekend when I was a kid.

1. Did you used to go to dance classes when you were young?
2. I would do a lot of housework yesterday afternoon.
3. I didn't used to enjoy jogging, but now I do.
4. When I was young, my parents would taking us to the beach every summer.

13.8 REWRITE EACH SENTENCE USING "WOULD" OR "USED TO"

I would often have lunch at Rico's Café when I was working in Monterrey.

I often used to have lunch at Rico's Café when I was working in Monterrey.

1. When I was young, I didn't use to clean up my bedroom. It made my mom really angry!
2. My brother and I used to play video games for hours when we were young.
3. I wouldn't drink tea when I was little. Now I drink it all day long!
4. In college, I often used to meet my friends for coffee after classes had finished for the day.

14 Comparing and contrasting

Using "as... as" is a very flexible way to make comparisons. You can use it to compare and contrast quantities and qualities of people, objects, situations, and ideas.

New language "As... as" comparisons
Aa Vocabulary Adjective–noun collocations
New skill Comparing and contrasting

14.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE EXPRESSIONS IN THE PANEL

TIP
You will need to use some of the phrases more than once.



Our chances of winning are even. We're *just as* good a team as they are.

1 

This train ticket is _____ expensive as that one because of the 50 percent discount.

2 

He is _____ intelligent as his brother. They both got high grades.

3 
Peter is _____ good at soccer as the others. He'll catch up quickly.

4 
My new place is _____ big as my old one. It only has one bedroom instead of four.

5 
The new album is _____ catchy as their old stuff. I liked their first album a little more.

6 
My new computer is _____ fast as my old one. It's actually a little slower.

7 
This new soft drink tastes _____ good as SodaUp, but it's not quite the same.

8 
The car was _____ expensive as we'd thought. It was a real bargain.

9 
They both worked hard. She deserved to win _____ much as he did.

just as | nearly as | not quite as | half as | nowhere near as

14.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS



Two coffee shops, Frank's and Morello's, are being compared.

Which coffee shop has better coffee?
Morello's ☑ **Frank's** ☐ **Neither** ☐

1. Which coffee shop is older?
Morello's ☐ **Frank's** ☐ **Neither** ☐

2. Which coffee shop is bigger?
Morello's ☐ **Frank's** ☐ **Neither** ☐

3. Which coffee shop has more staff?
Morello's ☐ **Frank's** ☐ **Neither** ☐

4. Which coffee shop has more customers?
Morello's ☐ **Frank's** ☐ **Neither** ☐

5. Which coffee shop provides a faster service?
Morello's ☐ **Frank's** ☐ **Neither** ☐

6. Which shop sells a wider range of pastries?
Morello's ☐ **Frank's** ☐ **Neither** ☐

7. Which coffee shop is closer to downtown?
Morello's ☐ **Frank's** ☐ **Neither** ☐

14.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

She walks as silently as a mouse. ☑
She walks silently as a mouse. ☐

1. This train isn't quite as fast as we'd thought. ☐
This train isn't not as fast as we'd thought. ☐

2. He can't type quickly as she can. ☐
He can't type as quickly as she can. ☐

3. It was nowhere near as good as I'd hoped. ☐
It wasn't as half good as I'd hoped. ☐

4. It tasted just as good as it did last time. ☐
It tasted just as good it did last time. ☐

5. She doesn't shop as much as she used to. ☐
She doesn't shop she used to. ☐

6. They ran as quickly as they could. ☐
They ran quickly as they could. ☐

7. The car was as nearly as fast as we thought. ☐
The car wasn't nearly as fast as we thought. ☐

8. He told us to do it efficiently as possible. ☐
He told us to do it as efficiently as possible. ☐

9. Cooking took half as long as usual today. ☐
Cooking took as half as long as usual today. ☐

10. I wasn't as confident as I was before. ☐
I wasn't as confident I was before. ☐

11. These pastries are just good as Ann's. ☐
These pastries are just as good as Ann's. ☐

Aa 14.4 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE COLLOCATIONS FROM THE PANEL

Louise always wears ear plugs in bed because she's such a *light sleeper* .

1. Most people think that if a product has a _____ , it must be good quality.
2. My friend Robbie is a very _____ . Nothing wakes him up!
3. I was very pleased to hear that my teacher has a _____ of me.
4. After traveling for thirty hours with very little sleep, I needed some _____ .
5. Discount retailers like this one sell everything at a _____ .
6. Everyone leaves work at about 5pm, so there's always _____ at that time.
7. I like _____ with lots of milk in it.

high price	low price	heavy sleeper	~~light sleeper~~
strong coffee	weak coffee	high opinion	heavy traffic

Aa 14.5 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

We should grab a bite to eat		so he has to wine-and-dine clients.
1 I love cakes and candy. You could say		on a three-course meal.
2 Sometimes it's fun to spend money		went out of their way to cook for us.
3 My brother is a businessman		before the movie starts.
4 The dinner party was amazing. My friends		savory dish using tofu and fish.
5 He cooked an interesting		that I have a sweet tooth.

14.6 READ THE BLOG AND WRITE ANSWERS TO THE QUESTIONS AS FULL SENTENCES

CATHERINE'S BLOG

HOME | ENTRIES | ABOUT | CONTACT



POSTED FRIDAY, 6:20PM

Going back to school...

I did just as well in college as my sister did. She had become a banker and was already earning nearly as much as my dad, who's a manager in a factory. I was not quite as enthusiastic about banking as my sister was, but I thought I'd give it a try. The work was nowhere near as interesting as I'd hoped and I was working about 80 hours a week. When I talked to friends about their jobs, I found out they were working about half as many hours as me. My mom told me she was really worried about me. My dad was just as worried.

In the end, I decided I was enjoying my job nowhere near as much as I should have been and I was really depressed. I quit my job and decided to go back to college to study photography. Studying was not quite as scary the second time around because I knew how everything worked and I loved every minute. I also met other older students who were just as happy to be there as I was. I didn't miss class nearly as often as I'd done before. I was always there. The major was just as interesting as I'd thought and it helped me to develop into a photographer and a much happier woman!

How did Catherine do in college?

Catherine did just as well as her sister in college.

1. Who was more enthusiastic about a career in banking, Catherine or her sister?

2. How did Catherine's working hours compare to her friends' when she was a banker?

3. How did Catherine's parents feel about how much she was working?

4. How did Catherine's second experience of college life compare with her first?

5. How did the photography major compare with what Catherine had thought it would be like?

15 Two comparatives together

You can use two comparatives in a sentence to show the effect of an action. You can also use them to show that something is changing.

New language Two comparatives together
Aa Vocabulary Age and population
New skill Expressing cause, effect, and change

15.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	The harder I study,	the wiser you become.
1	The more I think about the exam,	the colder it gets.
2	The older you are,	the more frightened we felt.
3	The more the boat shook,	the more I learn.
4	The more advanced the course becomes,	the more nervous I feel.
5	The higher up the mountain you go,	the more difficult it gets.

15.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

The | terrified | he | more | drives, | become. | faster | the | I

The faster he drives, the more terrified I become.

1 The | I | earn, | more | I | more | the | save.

2 The | time | happier | we | more | we | spend | outdoors, | the | feel.

3 The | becomes. | the | Joel | works, | harder | he | unhappier

15.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Later I watch TV, more bad the shows become.
The later I watch TV, the worse the shows become.



1. The most difficult a challenge is, the most I enjoy it.



2. The early you start working on the project, sooner you'll finish.



3. Long an action film is, less I want to watch it.



4. The hottest it is, thirstiest I become in the summer months.



5. The more angry Peter gets, the lesser sure I become of how to react.



6. More successful my sister becomes, more stressed she gets.



7. The friendly a person is, the more popular they are at work.



8. The more I study, the less certainer I become of what I know.



9. The dangerous an adventure sport is, the more I like it.



10. Further you swim in the mornings and evenings, fitter you'll become.



11. The least junk food you eat in the day, the slimmest you'll get.



12. More interviews with successful people I read, more I realize success is down to hard work.

15.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS



Linda bumps into her old friend Chloe.
They talk about their busy lives.

Linda thinks that as you get older, time goes...
- **quicker and quicker** ☑
- **quicker and longer** ☐
- **quicker and slower** ☐

1 Chloe says her life is...
- **busier and busier** ☐
- **easier and easier** ☐
- **more and more interesting** ☐

2 Chloe is feeling more...
- **and more depressed about life** ☐
- **and more lonely** ☐
- **and more tired** ☐

3 Chloe's attitude toward going to bed is...
- **the later the better** ☐
- **the earlier the better** ☐
- **the quieter the better** ☐

4 Dan's job is becoming more...
- **and more exciting** ☐
- **and more stressful** ☐
- **and more rewarding** ☐

5 Chloe's attitude towards her vacation is...
- **the more relaxing the better** ☐
- **the hotter the better** ☐
- **the sooner the better** ☐

15.5 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL

The days in November and December become _____ *shorter and shorter.* _____

1 Because of climate change, temperatures on Earth are getting _____ .

2 In developed countries, people are getting _____ . Is this fair?

3 Ben practices the piano every day so he's getting _____ .

4 Every time I look at my baby daughter she seems _____ to me.

5 I waved as the boat got _____ away, and a tear slid down my cheek.

better and better | farther and farther | hotter and hotter
more and more beautiful | richer and richer | ~~shorter and shorter~~

16 Vocabulary

Aa 16.1 **STUDYING** WRITE THE PHRASES FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

Consider and describe how things are alike



compare similarities

1. Register to start something



2. Go to lessons or lectures



3. Surprisingly not alike



4. Answer questions or perform actions to show how much you know about something



5. Consider and describe how things are different



6. Someone studying for a first degree at college or university



7. Finish something within a given time



8. A significant level of difference



9. Fail to finish something within a given time



10. Grading based on work done over a long period



11. Study carried out following graduation from a first degree



12. Provide comments and advice on how somebody is doing something



13. An obvious difference



clear distinction | give someone feedback on something | meet a deadline | ~~compare similarities~~
undergraduate | attend classes | postgraduate | contrast differences | continuous assessment
take a test / take an exam | a world of difference | miss a deadline | strikingly different | enrol in

17 Taking notes

Discourse markers can help you to organize language to make it easier for the listener or reader to follow. Listening for them is very useful when taking notes.

New language Organizing information
Aa Vocabulary Academic life
New skill Taking notes

17.1 MATCH THE DISCOURSE MARKERS TO THEIR SYNONYMS

	second	for example
1	such as	in addition
2	additionally	in conclusion
3	furthermore	next
4	therefore	moreover
5	to conclude	as a result

17.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	To sum up, studying abroad	what the benefits would be.
1	It is, therefore, easier to study	example, studying at a university.
2	There are a lot of possibilities. For	in a place where you know the language.
3	First, you have to think about	has both advantages and disadvantages.
4	In conclusion, I think studying	go to a Spanish-speaking country.
5	Moreover, you also have the chance	abroad is something everyone should try.
6	If you know Spanish, for instance,	to meet people from other countries.

17.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS



A university professor is addressing a group of first-year students who have just enrolled at the university.

The speaker is talking to people who are studying English. **True** ☑ **False** ☐

1. Students can attend classes as and when they choose to do so. **True** ☐ **False** ☐
2. The first point she makes is the importance of speaking English in class. **True** ☐ **False** ☐
3. The last of her three points is the importance of studying outside of class. **True** ☐ **False** ☐
4. The teacher will never assign extra reading. **True** ☐ **False** ☐
5. Students have access to an online platform during their course. **True** ☐ **False** ☐
6. There is only one way that students can study outside of class. **True** ☐ **False** ☐

17.4 READ THE EMAIL AND PUT THE DISCOURSE MARKERS INTO THE CORRECT CATEGORIES

SEQUENCING	ADDING
first	

EXAMPLES	CONCLUDING

To: Sam Jones

Subject: Re: Studying overseas

Hi Sam,

You're right. I noticed some differences between being a student in the UK and in France when I studied abroad. First, the days on campus were long. We had to be in class for six or eight hours every day, for example. Second, the classes were more like lessons than lectures. The teacher would give us homework, for instance, and this would be things such as exercises from a book. Third, the atmosphere at the university was much more relaxed. Additionally, there were a lot of clubs to get involved in. Overall it was a fantastic experience. Moreover, it helped me to improve my French a lot. In conclusion, I would recommend studying abroad to anyone.

Best wishes,

John

17.5 REWRITE THE FIRST CONDITIONAL SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Unless you write the essay by Friday, you have to leave the class.
Unless you write the essay by Friday, you will have to leave the class.

1. If they will want to go on the trip, they'll need to sign up today.

2. Unless we will get three more registrations, we won't be able to run the class.

3. If he wants to join the Spanish class, he is needing to email me this evening.

4. If you will join the committee, you will have to give up a lot of your free time.

5. If you want to meet up for coffee later, I will be being in the library.

6. I will having to cancel Tuesday's class unless we can find another room.

7. If they will want to find out more about our club, we are at the fair tomorrow.

8. Unless we will hear from them in the next five minutes, we will start without them.

9. If you will be biology student, you will need to buy a lab coat by Friday.

10. If you are needing a study partner next semester, I might be available.

11. If they will be able to come to the film night, it will be a great evening.

17.6 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	If you register on the online platform,	I expect you to do it.
1	If you sign up for this study group,	unless you work a lot harder.
2	When you are a student ambassador,	if you have any further questions.
3	You will fail the exam	you can see the information there.
4	When I give you homework,	you have to come to weekly meetings.
5	Send me an email	you can apply to study abroad.
6	If you want to find a part-time job,	you are a representative of the university.
7	If you're interested in hiking,	don't take your library books back late.
8	Unless you can pay a big fine,	you can go to our career center.
9	When you go into the second year,	if you need someone to talk to.
10	I am always ready to listen	you can join the Expeditions Society.
11	If you want to study French,	you will not understand this subject.
12	Unless you attend classes regularly,	you should visit the language center.

17.7 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE CORRECT SUMMARY



A counselor at a university is informing students about the options available to them for their year abroad.

1. Only rich students can study during their year abroad. Everyone else will need to work. ☐
2. The best option is to combine work experience and studying while you're abroad. ☐
3. Students can choose whichever of the three options for their year abroad they prefer. ☐

18 Speaking approximately

English has a number of useful phrases to describe approximate quantities and amounts. You can use them when a number is unknown or roughly accurate.

New language Generalization
Aa Vocabulary Approximate quantity phrases
New skill Talking about numbers

Aa 18.1 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT DESCRIPTIONS



the vast majority

well over fifty percent

a small minority

just under a third

approximately half

18.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

52% Approximately / ~~Well over~~ half of the students in the college in the current year are male.

1. 8% In a few / the majority of cases students are asked to retake the year.
2. 9% In a number / approximately half of cases students drop out and leave college.
3. 7% In some / most cases students can ask to defer and start college a year later.
4. 91% In a majority / third of cases students make friends for life while in college.
5. 95% In a minority of / most cases students live on campus in their first year.
6. 23% Just under / Well over a quarter of students have part-time jobs.

18.3 READ THE EMAIL AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

To: College Governors

Subject: Student numbers report

Dear Governors,

Please find below the latest figures on our student body this year.

Students: 1,672 undergraduates, 329 graduates. 54 percent female, 46 percent male. 89 international students (60 from Asia, three from South America, 26 from North America).

Campus: 320 acres, 15 minutes from Riverside city center. 98 percent of students live on campus.

Subjects: 32 different degree subjects in Arts (35 percent), Sciences (41 percent), Humanities (11 percent) and Engineering (13 percent).

Clubs: 47 different clubs ranging from skiing to chess to hot-air ballooning. Most students can find a club for something they are interested in.

Meet and Greet: Last year, 1,480 students attended the Meet and Greet. This year's Meet and Greet takes place at the Union Hall, 7pm on October 3.

The majority of students at the college are undergraduates. **True** ☑ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

1. Just under half of students are female. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
2. There are some students from South America. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
3. In most cases, international students are Asian. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
4. The college campus is much bigger than at most colleges. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
5. A vast majority of students live on campus. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
6. Just under a third of students study an arts subject. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
7. Biology is the most popular subject. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
8. There are just under 50 different clubs. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
9. In a few cases, students can't find a club that interests them. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
10. You need lots of other students in order to start a club. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
11. Well over 2,000 students went to last year's Meet and Greet. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

18.4 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS AND PHRASES IN THE PANEL

92% In *the majority of* cases, foreign language students study abroad for one year.

1. **15%** In a _____ cases, the company will hire candidates who do not have a degree.
2. **67%** Approximately _____ of students regularly buy fast food.
3. **$180** I'm not prepared to pay as _____ as $180 to go to a music festival.
4. **20%** In _____ cases, patients are asked to stay at home so they don't infect others.
5. **$30** The plane tickets are really cheap. They cost as _____ as $30.
6. **90/120** Can you believe it? Out of 120 professors, as _____ as 90 can speak three languages.
7. **96%** _____ 90 percent of students complete their studies.
8. **30%** In a _____ of cases, students will have to find their own accommodation.
9. **84%** In _____ cases, you'll feel much better within a week.
10. **3** The yoga class isn't very popular. There are as _____ as three people at most classes.
11. **23%** _____ a quarter of students take more than a year to find a job.
12. **53%** _____ half of students meet their future partner in college.

few	~~the majority of~~	Just over	Just under	little	Well over	many
minority	most	much	some	few	two-thirds	

18.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

The majority of students at Jeremy's college join a sports club.	True ☑	False ☐	Not given ☐
1 Most students who join a club have never tried the sport.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
2 There are lots of female students in the soccer club.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
3 In most cases, it costs no more than $5 per semester to join a club.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
4 Students can choose from over 70 clubs.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
5 In your first year, you can only join six clubs.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
6 You have to apply for membership two weeks before you join.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐

18.6 RESPOND TO THE AUDIO, FILLING IN THE GAPS IN THE SENTENCES

Most of the people who go to this college end up in really low-paid jobs.

Is that right? I heard completely _____ *the opposite.* _____

1 Unfortunately, the class sizes are really big.

Really? I heard that the class sizes are _____

2 The professors are really uninspiring and have nothing new to say.

Is that so? My experience is very _____ from that.

3 I've been told that the student accommodation is dirty and dark.

Is that right? I heard that it is _____

really small. clean and comfortable. ~~the opposite.~~ different

19 Changing emphasis

There are a number of ways that you can change emphasis in English. One way is to use a less common grammatical structure, such as the passive voice.

New language The passive voice
Aa Vocabulary Online learning
New skill Changing sentence emphasis

19.1 READ THE BLOG POST AND CHOOSE THE BEST SUMMARY

Young Entrepreneurs

HOME | ENTRIES | ABOUT | CONTACT

POSTED THURSDAY, 8.20AM

A piece of cake



More and more people are now using crowdfunding websites to set up their own businesses. Just post some information about your business idea online and people will transfer money to your account. We talked to Rachel from London, who started using a crowdfunding website a few years ago.

"I started my business, Tea and Cakes, after I graduated from college. I used my savings to buy some basic equipment and started off at small local events. It went well, so I decided to make the business into my full-time job."

That was when Rachel started using the internet where she read about a crowdfunding website she could use. Within about an hour of joining, eight people had offered to fund Rachel's business and within a week it was 200!

Rachel started to expand the business, but after a while she realized that she would need to find a funding model that is appropriate for a larger company. "That was when I found another site where you can get investment in return for shares in your business and some of the investors on there were interested in me! It was a bit scary because I had to write a proper business plan and send it to them."

Rachel is now going to open a tea shop of her own in London. Her advice to other entrepreneurs? "Don't be afraid to try crowdfunding," she says. "It worked for me."

1. Entrepreneurs are being given training in how to set up their own businesses by crowdfunding websites. ☐
2. Crowdfunding websites are being used by entrepreneurs like Rachel to raise funds for their business. ☐
3. Crowdfunding is being used to raise large amounts of money for companies that are active on social media. ☐
4. A business advisor helped Rachel to put together a business plan and find funding for her business online. ☐

19.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Crowdfunding websites ~~are using~~ / **are being used** by more and more people today.

1. Money for setting up a new business **can raise** / **can be raised** through these websites.
2. Rachel **had been selling** / **had been sold** at local events before she decided to get serious.
3. Rachel found out that social media **was using** / **was being used** by other entrepreneurs.
4. Rachel **set up** / **was set up** her own website by using a simple web platform.
5. Within a week, Rachel **had offered** / **had been offered** funding by eight investors online.
6. Rachel **took on** / **was taken on** someone to work for her as her business grew.
7. Later Rachel **found** / **was found** another crowdfunding website.
8. Rachel's new tea shop **will locate** / **will be located** in London.

19.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES USING THE PASSIVE VOICE

Entrepreneurs set up new businesses.
New businesses *are set up by entrepreneurs.*

1. They were selling their products at the baseball club last weekend.
   Their products _____
2. Entrepreneurs can easily use social media to promote their businesses.
   Social media _____
3. We will write our detailed business plan for the next 12 months this weekend.
   Our detailed business plan _____
4. He had already sold his old catering business when he bought the hairdressing business.
   His old catering business _____
5. Someone delivered all of the cooking equipment to our new shop yesterday.
   All of the cooking equipment _____

19.4 SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD USING THE WORDS FROM THE PANEL

TIP
Nouns formed from phrasal verbs are spoken with the stress on the first syllable.

Here are the *login* details you need to use this website.

1. _____ time at this hotel is 2pm. Your room won't be free until then.
2. Just put the _____ in the fridge. We'll have them for lunch tomorrow.
3. Don't forget to make a _____ of your files.
4. The police are looking for an _____ who may have seen the bank robbers.
5. Let me make it clear from the _____ what I expect from you.
6. In the first part of the lesson I'll give you a lot of _____ and then you'll be able to use it.
7. Getting angry with the boss in the boardroom was his _____. He'll never work here again.
8. The police have announced a _____ on bicycle thieves.

downfall onlooker crackdown backup outset
input leftovers ~~login~~ Check-in

19.5 READ THE ARTICLE AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

All hotel guests are able to sleep in until noon before checking out.
True ☐ **False** ☑

1. There are more budget hotels today than there were in the past.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
2. Guests at budget hotels have early check-in times.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
3. Budget hotels have had a negative effect on other hotels.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
4. A receptionist will always be there when you check into a budget hotel.
   True ☐ **False** ☐

TRAVEL TIPS

The rise and rise of the budget hotel



The days when hotel guests could enjoy sleeping in until noon before checking out are gone. As the number of budget hotels rises, they are making stricter rules for their guests and one of them is earlier check-out times and later check-in times. Such hotels have been the downfall of some of the more expensive hotel chains, which are no longer attracting as many guests as they used to.

Budget hotels will provide you with the services you expect, but from the outset you will notice that they also do everything they can to ensure savings. If you arrive in the evening, for example, you might have to go to a computer terminal to check in. There usually won't be a receptionist there to do it for you. You may also find that your room isn't as clean as you would like it to be.

19.6 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

From the outset,	we were told about the challenges.
1 When my dad cooks,	there are never any leftovers.
2 After losing my data, I know	it's essential to have a backup.
3 Never share your login	with anyone for security reasons.
4 There has been a crackdown	on social media use during class.
5 I always prefer an early check-in	to make the journey easier.
6 The police put up a line	to hold back onlookers.

20 Things that might happen

There are many ways to talk about hypothetical future situations. You can use different structures to indicate whether you think a hypothesis is likely or unlikely.

New language "What if," "suppose," "in case"
Aa Vocabulary Exams and assessment
New skill Talking about hypothetical situations

20.1 MATCH THE SITUATIONS TO THE LIKELY CONSEQUENCES

	I'm taking four pens with me	in case I need to look some words up.
1	I'm taking my dictionary	That would make it difficult to concentrate.
2	What if I run out of time?	I would fail the exam if someone calls me.
3	Suppose I don't understand a question.	just in case three of them run out.
4	What if I catch a cold?	Then I won't finish the exam.
5	Suppose I forget to turn my phone off.	in case I don't hear the first one.
6	I'm going to set two alarms	I will ask the examiner to repeat it.

20.2 MARK WHETHER THE OUTCOMES ARE LIKELY OR UNLIKELY

Suppose I won the lottery? I could buy my own car.	Likely ☐	Unlikely ☑
1 What if we all fail the test? We'll have to take it again.	Likely ☐	Unlikely ☐
2 Suppose I wrote a book. I could become famous.	Likely ☐	Unlikely ☐
3 I'm taking two pens in case my old one stops working.	Likely ☐	Unlikely ☐
4 What if I misunderstood the road signs? I could get lost.	Likely ☐	Unlikely ☐
5 Suppose I got a job. I could move to a new house.	Likely ☐	Unlikely ☐
6 It's supposed to be rainy, so I'll get my raincoat.	Likely ☐	Unlikely ☐

20.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT VERB FORM IN EACH SENTENCE



What if you **ask** / ~~**asked**~~ the teacher for some help? He won't mind.

1. 
I know it's not likely, but suppose I **have** / **had** an accident on the way to school.

2. 
What if I **help** / **helped** you review and you help me with my essay?

3. 
Suppose we **find** / **found** a rat in our classroom and the test was delayed.

4. 
You should ask if you can have more time just in case they **say** / **said** yes.

5. 
Suppose another fire alarm **goes** / **went** off during the exam. Will they give us more time?

6. 
What if we **don't** / **didn't** know the answers to any of the questions? What would we do?

20.4 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE CORRECT TENSES

I would be surprised if that topic *was* **(be)** in the exam. It seems unlikely.

1. If you _____ **(get)** 100 percent in the biology exam on Monday, I would be amazed.
2. We _____ **(learn)** much more quickly if we use an app to help us learn the words.
3. What if it _____ **(snow)** and we couldn't get to school on the day of the exam?
4. If my brother _____ **(win)** the prize for the best student, I would be shocked.
5. My parents will be happy if I _____ **(pass)** the chemistry exam.
6. If we bought a new car, we _____ **(not be)** late so often!
7. She _____ **(not finish)** in time if she doesn't start her project soon.
8. It would be so much less stressful if the teachers _____ **(give)** us some help.

20.5 RESPOND TO THE AUDIO OUT LOUD, SAYING WHAT MIGHT HAPPEN

Suppose you were a teacher. What subject would you teach?

I'd teach biology because that's my favorite subject.

1. Suppose you could decide how long the weekend was. How many days would it have?

2. Suppose you have some time to watch TV this evening. What will you watch?

3. If you could spend six months anywhere in the world, where would you go?

4. If you could have dinner with anyone, who would you choose?

5. Suppose you had the chance to study abroad. Where would you go?

6. If you won the lottery, what would be the first thing you'd buy?

7. Suppose you got two free tickets to a concert. Who would you go with?

21 Vocabulary

Aa 21.1 **WORKING** WRITE THE PHRASES FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

Do more than you are required to do

go the extra mile



1. A position without many prospects



2. Aim to achieve a particular goal



3. The knowledge and skill gained through doing something yourself



4. Make more progress than others



5. Be forced to leave your job for doing something wrong



6. Have too much work to do



7. Deal with something directly



8. Suddenly begin to have more success



9. A position with the lowest level of responsibility or compensation



10. A job with regular hours



11. Made to leave a job because there is not enough work available



12. Compromise



13. The conditions in which you work



hands-on experience | bottom of the career ladder | be snowed under | nine-to-five | give and take | ~~go the extra mile~~ | set your sights on something | get ahead | dead-end job | take off | tackle something head-on | be fired | working environment | laid off

22 Job applications

In English, prepositions can only be followed by a noun phrase or a gerund. This is particularly important when talking about the order of events.

New language Prepositions and gerunds
Aa Vocabulary Job applications
New skill Writing a résumé and cover letter

22.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

Since ___leaving___ my old job and going back to college, I've started a better-paid job.

1. After _____ my studies I decided to take a year off and go traveling.
2. _____ original and innovative products is something I'm particularly interested in.
3. _____ spending the summer having fun, I want to get a job and earn some money.
4. _____ attending a workshop on project management, I have a deeper understanding of this area.
5. I've applied _____ so many jobs, but I haven't had a single interview.
6. _____ starting my studies, I had earned very high grades at school.
7. While _____ at a school in Peru, I realized how much I enjoy helping other people.
8. _____ giving me a strong theoretical grounding, my degree also gave me practical skills.
9. _____ work at your company immediately would be perfect for me.
10. They're _____ doing interviews for the job, they're also asking people to take a test.
11. _____ completing my studies, I have gained some work experience in marketing.
12. After _____ the job ad, I knew this job was the one for me and I applied for it.
13. _____ working in human resources for 10 years, I wouldn't be able to take on this role.
14. Since _____ as a doctor, I've started working at a local hospital.
15. _____ out into the community to work with people has been very valuable.

Going	As well as	Before	Without	Since	seeing	After	completing
for	Instead of	not only	volunteering	Starting	Developing	qualifying	~~leaving~~

22.2 READ THE JOB ADVERTISEMENT AND WRITE ANSWERS TO THE QUESTIONS AS FULL SENTENCES

VACANCIES

Job opening

Digital Marketing Manager: Transvan logistics

We are looking for an experienced and enthusiastic individual to coordinate marketing activities across desktop and mobile digital platforms. With at least five years' experience in a similar position, you will be responsible for growing the number of visitors to our website. We are a logistics company, so any experience in the logistics industry would be particularly relevant and desirable.

About you: You will be happy to get involved with all aspects of our marketing activities. Ideally, we want someone who will stay with us for a long time and who will be an active part of the young, fun team we've built up.

Must haves:
- Five or more years' experience in digital marketing
- A Bachelor's degree or higher
- Perfect spoken and written English skills
- Excellent communication skills
- Previous experience working for a logistics company (desirable, not essential)
- A great eye for detail

How to apply: Please send a résumé and cover letter by March 26.

How much experience in digital marketing would the ideal candidate for this job have?

The ideal candidate would have at least 5 years' experience in digital marketing.

1. Experience of which industry would be particularly desirable?

2. What will the candidate be responsible for?

3. How long would the ideal candidate stay with the company for?

4. What academic qualifications do you need to have to apply for this job?

5. Which language do you need to be able to speak and write perfectly?

6. What do you have to send to the company if you want to apply for this job?

22.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

I write to apply for the position of sales representative advertised on your website.
I'm writing to apply for the position of sales representative advertised on your website.

1. I have recently completing a degree in mechanical engineering.

2. This has prepared me very good for working in the area of product management.

3. One course I made on brand design is particularly relevant to this position.

4. I have a keen interest in follow developments in the food industry.

5. Thank you for taking the time to consider my application and I look forward to hear from you.

22.4 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL

I have been *responsible for* teams of up to 10 people in my previous positions.

1. The contents of my degree course have prepared me very well for _____ .
2. I have a _____ in the energy sector and have work experience in this area.
3. You will find that I'm a fast and accurate writer with a keen _____ .
4. I would be able to _____ the responsibility that this position involves.
5. The experience I have gained in my previous jobs is _____ to this position.

eye for detail | particularly relevant | take on | strong interest | ~~responsible for~~ | this position

22.5 MARK THE MORE FORMAL SENTENCE IN EACH PAIR



A lot of the stuff I studied during my degree would be relevant to this job. ☐
A lot of the courses I did during my degree would be relevant to this job. ☑

1 

I can see myself being an awesome boss one day. ☐
I think I would make an excellent office supervisor at some point in the future. ☐

2 

My first job was a complete nightmare because my colleagues weren't very nice to me. ☐
In my old job I experienced some conflict with colleagues. ☐

3 

I've organized lots of events like trade fairs and product launches. ☐
I've organized a lot of events such as trade fairs and product launches. ☐

4 

Since graduating from college, I've gained a lot of experience in public relations. ☐
Since graduating from college, I've got loads of experience in PR. ☐

5 

I may look to move into a managerial job in a few years' time. ☐
Maybe I'll move into a managerial job in a few years' time. ☐

6 

I want to do stuff like organize marketing campaigns. ☐
I would like to be involved with the organization of marketing campaigns. ☐

7 

As you can see, I have extensive work experience in the area of retail. ☐
As you can see, I have lots of work experience in retail. ☐

8 

My skills are significantly superior to those of the average candidate. ☐
My skills are way better than the skills most people have. ☐

9 

It would be great if you could look at my application. ☐
Thank you for taking the time to consider my application. ☐

10 

My work experience is particularly relevant to this position. ☐
My work experience is really great for this position. ☐

11 

I have an in-depth knowledge of product development processes. ☐
I know lots about product development processes. ☐

12 

I've wanted to be an electrician for ages. ☐
I've wanted to be an electrician for a very long time. ☐

13 

I very much look forward to hearing from you. ☐
I hope you'll write back to me soon. ☐

23 Asking polite questions

In English, asking questions directly can sometimes be seen as impolite. It is very common for English speakers to make their questions more indirect.

New language Direct and indirect questions
Aa Vocabulary Job interviews
New skill Asking questions politely

23.1 REWRITE THE DIRECT QUESTIONS AS INDIRECT QUESTIONS

Do you have any weaknesses?
Could you tell me if *you have any weaknesses?*

1. Do you have any relevant experience in this area?
   Could you tell me if _____
2. Are your studies relevant to this area?
   I was wondering whether _____
3. Have you applied for any other jobs?
   We'd like to know whether _____
4. Do you like working on a team?
   I was wondering if _____
5. Are you a good team player?
   We'd like to know if _____
6. What would you like to be doing in 10 years' time?
   Do you have any idea what _____
7. What are your weaknesses?
   Could you tell me what _____
8. Where did you work after completing your studies?
   I was wondering where _____
9. Where in China did you study?
   I'm curious to know where _____
10. Which area of our activities are you particularly interested in?
    Could you tell us which _____
11. Have you ever worked abroad?
    I'd like to know if _____

23.2 REWRITE THE INDIRECT QUESTIONS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

last | wondering | you | left | job. | why | I | was | your

I was wondering why you left your last job.

1. on? | tell | which | us | Could | you've | projects | you | worked

2. know | how | plan | you | to | work | for | I'd | us. | like | long | to

3. abroad. | was | where | I | wondering | studied | you

4. further | to | if | you'd | to | training. | do | know | like | We'd | like

23.3 SAY THE DIRECT QUESTIONS OUT LOUD AS INDIRECT QUESTIONS

What are your goals?

I was wondering *what your goals are.*

1. How did you get along with your last boss?

Could you tell us _____

2. Where do you want to be in five years' time?

Do you have any idea _____

3. Have you ever worked with children before?

I'm curious to know if _____

4. Have you ever managed a website before?

I was wondering whether _____

5. Why should we employ you?

Could you tell us _____

23.4 MATCH THE QUESTIONS TO THEIR ANSWERS WITH STALLING TECHNIQUES

	Would you be able to work weekends?	Well, I don't know. Managing a team is something I might be interested in.
1	Would you be prepared to travel a lot?	Good question. I'm not sure. Let me check with my family.
2	Would you like to lead a team one day?	Let me see. I'll check my schedule and let you know.
3	Could you come in for an interview?	Well, yes, that should be possible. I'll check with them.
4	Could you send us references from your previous employers?	Maybe we should wait and see how I settle in here first.
5	Can we count on you to stay with us long-term?	Let's see. It would depend where you wanted me to go.

23.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS



Mr. James is interviewing Rose for the position of Head of Communications.

How many other offers has Rose gotten so far?

- None ☐
- One ☑
- A lot of companies ☐

1 Which of the following is not important to Rose?

- How close the company is to her home ☐
- How many people are on her team ☐
- How challenging the job is ☐

2 What is Rose's greatest weakness?

- She wants to push herself all the time ☐
- She likes to control everything ☐
- She doesn't cope well in a crisis ☐

3 What is one of Rose's strengths as a manager?

- Her energy inspires the people on her team ☐
- She communicates well with her team ☐
- She wants to give her team new challenges ☐

4 What does Rose say about her salary?

- She would be willing to earn less than before ☐
- She wouldn't want to earn less than before ☐
- She wants to earn more than before ☐

5 What is Rose going to do about her salary?

- Rose wants Mr. James to decide her salary ☐
- Rose will call Mr. James and let him know ☐
- Rose will think about what she would expect ☐

23.6 RESPOND TO THE AUDIO, SPEAKING OUT LOUD AND ADDING APPROPRIATE STALLING PHRASES FROM THE PANEL

Is this the only job you've applied for?

Well, to be honest with you, I have applied for a few other jobs, too.

1. Could you tell us something about yourself?

   _____ I'm a dedicated worker and a great communicator.

2. Where do you want to be in 10 years' time?

   _____ I'd like to have a position in management.

3. How do you feel about working as part of a team?

   _____ it's something that I enjoy and would like to continue doing.

4. Could you tell me what your strengths are?

   _____ I have a keen eye for detail and I always give 100 percent.

5. Do you have any experience of holding a leadership role?

   _____ I did once take over from my boss while he was on vacation.

6. Would you be able to do overtime if we needed you to?

   _____ It would depend how much you needed me to do.

7. How soon would you be able to start if we offer you the job?

   _____ I could start next month.

Yes, where to start? ~~Well, to be honest~~ Let's see. I suppose Let me see.
I'm not sure. Oh, let me see. Well, Good question, let me see.

24 Complex verb patterns

There are several different patterns that verbs can follow, including whether they can be followed by an infinitive or a gerund.

New language Verb + infinitive / gerund
Aa Vocabulary World of work
New skill Using complex verb patterns

24.1 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

She hates people to make decisions without consulting her.
She hates people making decisions without consulting her.

1. She finally managed cutting down the number of hours she works from 40 to 35.
2. I think our manager should allow us leaving work a bit earlier on Friday afternoon.
3. This new piece of software enables me to making updates very quickly.
4. Sam threatened leaving if the boss doesn't find a new employee to help him.
5. I'm the person in my office who always volunteering to stay late.
6. This is the first time that a colleague has invited me having dinner at their home.
7. The merger deal we completed last month has caused our profits increase.
8. He doesn't like people to tell him what to do while he's at work.
9. The boss has offered sending me on a training course to improve my computer skills.
10. He enjoys to play the role of the hot-shot manager when visitors come.

24.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

I was glad that I managed ~~finishing~~ / to finish all my work on Friday afternoon. Now I can relax.

1. My colleague enjoys hearing / to hear from satisfied customers.
2. My new smartphone enabling / enables me to stay connected with my office wherever I am.
3. She hates her colleagues telling / to tell her what she should do in her department.
4. We like our customers giving / to give us feedback on the services we provide them.
5. My boss offered / offered to give me an office of my own next year.

24.3 READ THE ARTICLE AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

EMPLOYEES AND EMPLOYERS

Why people quit jobs

Rudeness and work/life balance are the top factors



Companies are advised to hold on to their employees for as long as possible. Losing employees is expensive and threatens to lower the morale on the teams that the employees leave behind. According to a recent survey, the thing that causes the largest number of employees to resign is rudeness. People just don't like their colleagues being rude to them. Another reason given by a lot of people is having a job that doesn't enable them to have a good work/life balance. Some people are being forced to do two people's jobs and, as a result, they have to work long hours and weekends.

Companies should try to keep employees as long as they can. **True** ☑ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

1. It doesn't cost companies much money when employees leave. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
2. Other employees' morale might be lower when a colleague leaves. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
3. More than 80 percent of people resign because of rudeness. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
4. Having a good work/life balance is important to a lot of people. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
5. Some people volunteer to do two people's jobs. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

24.4 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL



I was surprised when my daughter told me she would like *to study* in Canada next year.

1 

She always stops _____ at what's on at the movie theater when we walk past it.

2 

I remember _____ that movie with Brian Owen, but it was a very long time ago.

3 

She reminded him _____ to the supermarket after work, but he still forgot!

4 

I wish they would stop _____ at us like that. They're making me nervous.

5 

He finally remembered _____ me some flowers for my birthday. He usually forgets.

6 

When I was a child, my mother always encouraged me _____ fruit and vegetables.

7 

The turbulence caused the airplane _____ from side to side for about 10 minutes.

8 

He knew that we weren't interested in what he had to say, but he still went on _____ .

9 

I would advise you _____ an aspirin for your headache.

10 

Did you see Donald volunteering _____ the office party this year?

11 

He tried _____ the table through the door of our new living room, but it was too big.

12 

The boss threatened _____ us work all weekend if we didn't finish the project by Friday.

to move	to take	watching	to eat	looking	to buy
to organize	to look	to go	to push	talking	~~to study~~	to make



24.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

I forgot to tell something important to my boss at the meeting. ☐
I forgot to tell my boss something important at the meeting. ☑

1. Jade remembered giving that doll me as a birthday present when I was a child. ☐
   Jade remembered giving me that doll as a birthday present when I was a child. ☐
2. The inspector advised us to change our safety procedures in the factory. ☐
   The inspector advised us changing our safety procedures in the factory. ☐
3. She likes people talking about how great she is. She has a very big ego! ☐
   She likes people talk about how great she is. She has a very big ego! ☐
4. The loan we got from the bank enabled us to build an extension on our house. ☐
   The loan we got from the bank enabled us building an extension on our house. ☐
5. I'll write a note to remind myself to bring that book with me next week. ☐
   I'll write a note to remind myself bringing that book with me next week. ☐

24.6 READ THE EMAIL AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

How does Lynn feel about her job at the moment?
Lynn isn't enjoying her job.

1. What does Jackie advise Lynn to do with her boss?
2. What does Jackie suggest that Lynn's boss could do?
3. What should Lynn do if she can't fulfill her potential?
4. What positive quality does Jackie believe Lynn has?
5. What does Jackie think that Lynn shouldn't accept?

To: Lynn

Subject: Re: Unhappy at work

Hi Lynn,
I'm sorry to hear you're not enjoying your job. Have you managed to talk to your boss about it yet? I really think you should. Maybe she could allow you to do that training course you've always wanted to do. If your job isn't enabling you to fulfill your potential, I think you should leave and look for something else. You're so talented and shouldn't accept people telling you that you're not good enough to become a manager one day.
Let me know how it goes.
Best wishes,
Jackie

25 Double object verbs

Some verbs can be followed by both a direct object and an indirect object. Sentences using these verbs can be ordered in a number of different ways.

New language Double object verbs
Aa Vocabulary New businesses
New skill Talking about starting a business

25.1 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS IN THE ORDER OF THE WORDS

He bought a new book his daughter.
He bought his daughter a new book.

1. Jake lent a pencil me.
2. The teacher offered some help me.
3. She borrowed from Liz a book.
4. Susanne sent a postcard from her vacation me.
5. We donated to the families some old clothes.
6. They paid for the book 20 dollars.
7. John sent an email me yesterday.
8. I'm sure she told the truth you.
9. We gave some biscuits the dog.
10. He brought to her house his computer.
11. Joanne gave her notes him.
12. She lent to her son her car.
13. They bought some chocolates the teacher.
14. Brian the message passed on to Fiona for me.
15. Richard lent his pen me.
16. She always gives a ride to work me.
17. The teacher gave to those students bad grades.
18. Jason passed to me a note in class.
19. Kathryn lent some money her son.
20. They brought to the discussion a lot of energy.
21. He sold to the neighbor his old car.
22. They gave some candy her.
23. She gave to them some books she didn't need.

25.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

daughter | She | 50 | lent | her | dollars.

She lent her daughter 50 dollars.

1. Robert | a | me | of | help. | lot | gave

2. gave | to | Emma | that | me. | book

3. lent | bike | a | He | his | friend. | to

4. message | me. | the | They | on | to | passed

5. present. | He | wife | a | great | gave | his | birthday

25.3 MATCH THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE THE SAME EVENT

	The students received a lot of homework.	They donated money to the charity.
1	Another student bought his books.	I sent him an email.
2	The daughter received a car.	He lent some money to his son.
3	She received a message from him.	The teacher gave them a lot of homework.
4	The charity received money from them.	He sold his books to another student.
5	He borrowed some money from his dad.	He passed the message on to her.
6	He received an email from me.	She bought a car for her daughter.

25.4 READ THE BLOG AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

The Neighbor Network is a supermarket chain.
True ☐ **False** ☑ **Not given** ☐

1. *The Neighbor Network* is a new company.
   True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
2. *The Neighbor Network* was set up by two entrepreneurs.
   True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
3. You access *The Neighbor Network* through the internet.
   True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
4. You use *The Neighbor Network* to contact neighbors.
   True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
5. You can borrow things through *The Neighbor Network*.
   True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
6. There is a monthly charge for using the site.
   True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐



What's new

HOME | ENTRIES | ABOUT | CONTACT

POSTED FRIDAY, 1:45PM

THE SAVIOR

Run out of milk? Need to borrow a ladder from someone? *The Neighbor Network* is a social media start-up which helps you solve all these problems.

Ted used *The Neighbor Network* to get in touch with Isabelle who lent some books to him. Isabelle borrowed a light bulb from another neighbor she met on the site.

More connections in your community are just one click of a mouse away.

25.5 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE IDIOMS IN THE PANEL

At first I was worried about all of the *red tape* I would have to deal with.

1. However, I thought _____ and I decided to just go for it anyway.
2. Things really took off when I met an angel investor who basically wrote me a _____ .
3. Her faith in my abilities was the _____ that gave me an edge over the competition.
4. As a result, I was able to _____ and everyone was coming to me.
5. I had really _____ there.

cornered the market ~~red tape~~ ace up my sleeve blank check
nothing ventured, nothing gained hit the ground running

26 Vocabulary

Aa 26.1 MEETING AND PRESENTING WRITE THE PHRASES FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

Arrive at a point of agreement



reach a consensus

1 Write a record of what was said during a meeting



2 Present a formal talk for a group of people



3 Listen to and answer questions



4 Start working or doing something that you have to do



5 Conclude



6 A vote performed by raising hands to show agreement to a proposal



7 Arrange a date in the future



8 Have no time left for something



9 Included on the list of things to discuss



10 A group of people who manage a business or organization



11 Go to a meeting



12 A telephone call with a number of people at the same time



13 Not present



get down to business | show of hands | take minutes | absent

~~reach a consensus~~ | attend a meeting | take questions | on the agenda | conference call

give a presentation | board of directors | run out of time | sum up | set a date

27 Reflexive pronouns

Reflexive pronouns show that the subject of a verb is the same as its object. They can also be used in other situations to add emphasis.

New language Reflexive pronouns
Aa Vocabulary Workplace language
New skill Talking about work issues

27.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS


The company director *himself* came to our team meeting.

1 
Anna, you're welcome to help _____ to tea or coffee and cookies.

2 
I taught _____ to use this computer program.

3 
He is very proud of _____ for getting the highest grade in his class.

4 
You can all sit _____ down anywhere you like.

5 
We helped _____ to the free food at the staff party.

6 
I'm annoyed with _____ for not thinking about that.

7 
She accidentally cut _____ while she was cooking.

8 
The members of the team argued among _____ for about half an hour.

9 
They're very pleased with _____ because their boss praised their work.

10 
I often ask _____ why I decided to leave the country and move to the city.

11 
He felt that he had let _____ down.

27.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE

I've emailed the presentation to ~~me~~ / **myself** so I don't forget to look at it.

1. My grandparents are 90 years old, but they can still do everything for **them** / **themselves**.
2. He prides **him** / **himself** on his honesty and integrity.
3. Ramona is really busy today. Could you take this package to the post office for **her** / **herself**?
4. You don't need to translate that for me. I can do it for **me** / **myself**.
5. They got the contract because they worked much harder than **us** / **ourselves**.
6. You are all very welcome. Please make **yourself** / **yourselves** at home here.
7. Our neighbors were shouting at **each other** / **themselves** until 10 o'clock last night.

27.3 SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD, FILLING IN THE GAPS WITH THE CORRECT REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

I bought a book and the author *herself* signed it! She was really sweet.

1. We want you to prepare the presentations _____ .
2. The CEO _____ mentioned me during his annual speech.
3. I am very proud! I repaired the bike _____ .
4. We should be proud that we've achieved all of this by _____ .
5. Food _____ is changing and so are our eating habits.
6. They congratulated _____ on a job well done.
7. The shop manager _____ came down to apologize to me for her mistake.

27.4 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS IN THE PANEL

The winners of the competition will be able to enjoy *themselves* at this luxury hotel in the Caribbean.

1. I'm glad that we were able to do it _____ without asking the boss for help.
2. The presentation _____ went well, but the meeting afterwards went badly.
3. All of the children behaved _____ really well during the flight.
4. The president's wife _____ came to shake my hand and give me the award.
5. I felt very pleased with _____ when I found out that my painting had won the prize.
6. This is the first time that he's been able to walk by _____ since the accident.
7. I'm looking forward to having the house to _____ while my parents are away.
8. You should all help _____ to any books on my bookcase that you're interested in.
9. Your mother isn't going to wash your clothes anymore. You'll have to do it _____ .

himself ourselves ~~themselves~~ yourselves herself
myself yourself myself itself themselves

27.5 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	I have a lot of work to	you sort it out?
1	I can't come to the English lesson as	knock off at 12 o'clock.
2	The boss has asked her to	need to work on this year.
3	Customer service is something we	catch up on after my vacation.
4	My computer is not working. Can	I'm completely snowed under at work.
5	On Fridays we usually	stay behind this evening.

27.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

It's so busy that I think I'll have to stay after at work this evening.
It's so busy that I think I'll have to stay behind at work this evening.

1. Sometimes, I'm so snowed over at work that I don't have time to eat my lunch.

2. I need to sort up these customer queries.

3. She allowed her enough time to drive to the bank and park her car before the meeting.

4. Our project manager has given ourselves more responsibility.

5. I'm still trying to catch off with the work I should have done last week.

6. We can't tear him up from the video game he's playing for more than 10 minutes.

7. I think I have taken under too much work. I'm absolutely exhausted!

8. I always ask for challenging projects, but my boss never lets myself do them.

9. Here's the safety information for working in this building. Could you all familiarize itself with it?

10. I'm sorry, but I'll have to ask Jason to deal with this. I'm completely snowed on at the moment.

11. When students fail their exams, they usually don't blame themself.

12. When I take my children on the train, I bring some toys that they can occupy them with.

28 Meeting and planning

Many verbs can be followed by another verb. This can be a "to" infinitive ("want to eat") or a gerund ("enjoy cooking").

New language Combining verbs
Aa Vocabulary Office tasks
New skill Taking part in meetings

28.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE VERBS IN THE PANEL



I hate *traveling* by train. There are always delays and the seats usually aren't very clean.

1 

He can't stand _____ for people. He doesn't understand why people can't be on time.

2 

I have to say that I prefer _____ for myself to eating out. I can eat whatever I want then.

3 

I hate _____, but fresh flowers make a new house feel more like home.

4 

How would you propose _____ the big problems that we have?

5 

Your flight had such a long delay that I began _____ if you would ever make it back home.

6 

He likes _____ to a concert or the opera once a month or even more frequently if he can.

7 

You continued _____ my concerns even after you had seen the negative effects yourself.

8 

I love _____ outdoors in a lake or in the ocean, even if the water's quite cold.

9 

We started _____ our wedding last year as we knew it would take a long time.

to wonder	waiting	to plan	solving	to ignore
cooking	to go	moving	~~traveling~~	swimming

28.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	When we were young we **started**	to run for the last six miles.
1	In our family we usually **prefer**	getting up early, but now I like it.
2	The design department **proposed**	walking in the countryside.
3	Despite being tired, he **continued**	collecting stamps and now we have 5,000!
4	We've always really **loved**	saving money so he could buy a house.
5	When I was younger I **hated**	beach vacations to city breaks.
6	I have to say I **can't stand**	putting more time between our meetings.
7	The music was so good that I **started**	making some changes to the sizes.
8	Ten years ago he **began**	dancing along to it.
9	Marjorie **proposed**	hearing music from people's phones.

28.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE

I'll never forget ~~**to see**~~ / **seeing** my daughter receive her degree certificate. I felt so proud of her.

1. Now I regret **to ask** / **asking** him about his family. I had no idea what had happened to them.
2. He graduated at the top of his class and we think that he will go on **to be** / **being** a successful lawyer.
3. We regret **to inform** / **informing** you that on this occasion your application was not successful.
4. I remember **to put** / **putting** my car keys on the table, but then someone must have moved them.
5. Don't worry, he won't forget **to call** / **calling** you when he arrives in Australia.
6. After our success this season, we're sure the hotel will go on **to be** / **being** popular next season.
7. Please remember **to write** / **writing** to catering and ask if they can cater for 80 instead of 60.
8. Can we stop **to buy** / **buying** some snacks and get coffee at the next service station we get to?

28.4 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE HIGHLIGHTED VERBS

	proceed to do something in the future	They **went on** celebrating until 2am.
1	stop doing something to do something else	I **remembered** to buy her a present.
2	not forget to do something	Did you **forget** going to Paris with me?
3	wish you hadn't done something	She'll **go on** to be a great teacher.
4	have no memory of having done something	I **regret** to inform you about the changes.
5	continue doing something	We **stopped** to get coffee.
6	no longer do something	I **remember** visiting you when I was a child.
7	not remember to do something	I **regret** telling him that.
8	feel bad about having to do something	I **stopped** going to the gym in February.
9	have a memory of having done something	Sometimes I **forget** to charge my phone.

28.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

I stopped to smoke cigarettes last year. I live much more healthily nowadays. ☐
I stopped smoking cigarettes last year. I live much more healthily nowadays. ☑

1 I forgot to ask Valerie if she wanted to join us for dinner this evening. ☐
I forgot asking Valerie if she wanted to join us for dinner this evening. ☐

2 I always remember to close all of the windows when I leave the house. ☐
I always remember closing all of the windows when I leave the house. ☐

3 Who would have thought he would go on to be such a successful ballet dancer in the future? ☐
Who would have thought he would go on being such a successful ballet dancer in the future? ☐

4 The views along the coast road were so beautiful we decided to stop to take photos. ☐
The views along the coast road were so beautiful we decided to stop taking photos. ☐

5 I regret to say that he doesn't work as hard as everyone else. He hasn't spoken to me since. ☐
I regret saying that he doesn't work as hard as everyone else. He hasn't spoken to me since. ☐

28.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

prefer | working | having | hours. | flexible | I

I prefer having flexible working hours.

1. go | She | sixties. | into | working | had | her | to | on

2. regret | flight | to | We | inform | cancelations. | the | you | about

3. accepting | applications | two | They | ago. | stopped | years | paper

4. off. | Please | to | your | remember | turn | computer

28.7 SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD, FILLING IN THE GAPS WITH THE CORRECT FORM OF THE VERBS

Do you remember *swimming* **(swim)** in the Indian Ocean when we were on vacation?

1. Why do you always forget _____ **(buy)** milk when you go to the supermarket on your own?
2. When are you going to stop _____ **(work)** there and do something you really want to do?
3. Do you regret _____ **(get)** that tattoo of a dolphin on your neck now?
4. Do you think you would like _____ **(run)** the whole company one day?
5. Can we stop _____ **(have)** dinner at that nice restaurant in town on our way home?

29 Qualifying descriptions

There are many ways to qualify or add further detail to adjectives. Some types of adjectives can only be modified in certain ways.

New language Non-gradable adjectives
Aa Vocabulary Qualifying words
New skill Adding detail to descriptions

29.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL



The concert venue was _____enormous_____. Seventy thousand people could fit in there.

1 
She's a _____ scientist. I'm sure she'll win the Nobel Prize for physics one day.

2 
The fact that smoking can damage your health was _____ to most people until the 1970s.

3 
It's amazing that such a _____ chip can contain so much data.

4 
This scarf was handmade in Malaysia and the design is completely _____.

5 
Could you please send me this document in a _____ format? I can then upload it to our site.

6 
The weather was _____ last weekend. It wouldn't stop raining and it was really cold, too.

7 
I think it's _____ that there's so much bacteria on our phones.

8 
She tries to avoid using cosmetic products that have too many _____ ingredients in them.

9 
We're very proud of our _____ heritage, such as these 19th-century factory buildings.

brilliant awful disgusting unique ~~enormous~~
chemical industrial unknown tiny digital

29.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

It's not very economical to leave the lights on all night. Your electricity bill will be high! ☑
It's not completely economical to leave the lights on all night. Your electricity bill will be high! ☐

1. They had a very fantastic trip to South Africa. They're already planning their next trip. ☐
   They had an absolutely fantastic trip to South Africa. They're already planning their next trip. ☐
2. He's absolutely fascinated by trains so we decided to buy him a train set for his birthday. ☐
   He's very fascinated by trains so we decided to buy him a train set for his birthday. ☐
3. The delegates at the conference were very European with a few North Americans. ☐
   The delegates at the conference were largely European with a few North Americans. ☐
4. We wanted to create a very digital product for today's young people. ☐
   We wanted to create a completely digital product for today's young people. ☐
5. It's very impossible to put this table together. I'll never be able to do it. ☐
   It's completely impossible to put this table together. I'll never be able to do it. ☐

29.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE

If you use our new heating system, you'll be **very** / ~~**completely**~~ hot even on cold winter nights.

1. It's **hugely** / **absolutely** important that as many people as possible see these billboards.
2. This product is **totally** / **extremely** useful if you don't have very much time to spend on housework.
3. We think that our customer base will be **rather** / **perfectly** interested in this new feature.
4. Our competitors' products are **extremely** / **wholly** inadequate to deal with these challenges.
5. The first design was **absolutely** / **slightly** awful, so we had to get rid of it and create a new one.
6. The coffee machine has a **totally** / **very** unique feature that enables you to make hot or cold milk.
7. I'm **utterly** / **rather** exhausted after putting so much effort into the product launch last week.
8. The CEO can speak **slightly** / **quite** good English, but he's much better at Spanish or Portuguese.
9. Have you noticed that our new packaging designer is **completely** / **really** talented?

29.4 RESPOND TO THE AUDIO, SPEAKING OUT LOUD AND FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

How would you feel if you got a hundred percent on an English test?

I'd feel _extremely happy_ if I got a hundred percent on an English test.

1 What did you think of the film?

I loved it! I thought it was _____ and very funny.

2 How would you feel about giving a presentation in front of a thousand people?

I'm shy, so I'd feel _____ if I had to do that.

3 How would you feel if you lost your cell phone?

It would be so inconvenient! I'd be _____.

absolutely terrified | thoroughly enjoyable | utterly miserable | ~~extremely happy~~

29.5 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	The last product was really	successful and this one will be, too.
1	I thought the test was fairly	annoyed if we fall behind schedule.
2	Our product will be really	difficult, but my friend found it easy.
3	The presentation was pretty	interesting and I learned a lot from it.
4	My boss sometimes gets quite	popular with consumers everywhere.

29.6 READ THE PRODUCT DESCRIPTION AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

HOME SHOPPING TODAY

TurboTravel XS

The travel accessory that will change your flying experience



The TurboTravel XS is a brand new product for business travelers that packs several essential travel accessories inside a comfortable cushion. We're fairly sure that you've never seen a product quite like this before.

What makes the TurboTravel XS completely unique is its extra features, such as a phone charger, light, and pen. The technology it uses is relatively low-tech, but it gives business travelers exactly what they need.

A cable enables you to connect the cushion to your phone and charge it up using an electrical power pack inside the cushion. The light and pen enable you to fill in customs forms really easily.

When it comes to price, the TurboTravel retails at $69.99 so it's quite an expensive, high-end product. However, tests with consumer groups have shown that it's also an extremely reliable travel accessory. To sum up, the TurboTravel XS is a product worth investing in for any business traveler looking for a wholly innovative new combination of comfort and convenience.

The TurboTravel XS is a completely new product.	True ☑	False ☐	Not given ☐
1 Its makers are absolutely sure you've never seen a product like it.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
2 It has features that no other product of its type has.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
3 One of its extra features is an eye mask.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
4 The technology it uses it fairly low-tech.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
5 The light and pen make it easy to fill in forms.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
6 It's quite an expensive, high-end product.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
7 It's available for business travelers to buy online.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
8 It's already been on sale for a long time.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
9 Consumers think the product is not reliable.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
10 It's perfectly acceptable to use it at work.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐

30 Expressing purpose

There are a number of ways to express the purpose of, or reason for, an action. You use different expressions to describe the purpose of an object.

New language "In order to," "so that"
Aa Vocabulary Language of apology
New skill Expressing purpose

30.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	We organized a training course	in order to find the items I needed.
1	He wrote a bad review of the movie	to complain about a rude waiter.
2	She took the toaster back	to find out when they will connect us.
3	I looked everywhere in the store	to let everyone know about safety.
4	The store gave them a voucher	in order to get your money back.
5	He called the restaurant manager	to let everyone know it's terrible.
6	She raised her voice	so as to keep their business.
7	We called the airline	not to get a new one, but to get a refund.
8	You need to fill in this form	to let them know they're being too noisy.
9	I called our internet provider	so that everyone would hear her.
10	I talked to our neighbors	to find out about vacancies.
11	Now we check all of the pallets	to ask them to cancel our flights.
12	He looked for the company online	in order to complain about her haircut.
13	I called the HR department	to find out what others think about it.
14	He asked to speak to the chef	to ensure the goods in them aren't broken.
15	She talked to the salon manager	in order to protect them.
16	I covered the goods in shrink wrap	to compliment his cooking.

30.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES USING "SO THAT" TO JOIN THEM TOGETHER

He decided to advertise his business online. He wanted more people to know what he does.
He decided to advertise his business online so that more people would know what he does.

1. She took her car to the garage. She needed the mechanics to fix it.

2. We use RFID technology. This enables us to track the goods.

3. He wrote a positive review of the hotel. He wanted other people to know how good it is.

4. I usually get up at 5am. I like to go running before I go to work.

5. She spent a lot of time planning her presentation. She wanted to be well-prepared.

30.3 FILL IN THE GAPS USING "FOR" OR "TO"



This device is _____*for*_____ monitoring your heartbeat.

1. 
Our products are made _____ withstand all temperatures.

2. 
Our career website is _____ busy professional people.

3. 
You can use this little USB stick _____ connect to the internet in any location.

4. 
This headset is _____ video-chatting and web-conferencing.

5. 
This hi-fi system is only _____ serious music fans, as it's very expensive.

30.4 SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD, CHOOSING THE CORRECT WORDS

I'm calling **to complain** / ~~**complaining**~~ about the service I received at this store yesterday.

1. Can we offer you a voucher **to show** / **showing** we are sorry for the inconvenience caused.
2. I will be making a **complain** / **complaint** about your airline as soon as I get home.
3. I'm not very satisfied **for** / **with** the product I received from the company two days ago.
4. Could you **let** / **tell** me know when the basket of fruit that I ordered last week will arrive?
5. These workers are employed **to** / **for** pick and pack the goods in the factory outside the city.
6. Thank you for your prompt **assist** / **assistance** with the ongoing matter of delayed product delivery.
7. You can use this device **to** / **for** cleaning the windows in your house quickly and effectively.
8. I recently **delivered** / **ordered** a pair of running shoes from you as a gift for my sister.
9. I need a **replace** / **replacement** for this kettle as soon as possible, or else I will require a refund.
10. I look forward **to hear** / **to hearing** from you about the meeting next week.

31 Vocabulary

Aa 31.1 ENVIRONMENTAL CONCERNS WRITE THE PHRASES FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

Gases that cause the greenhouse effect, heating up the Earth
greenhouse gases



1 No longer existing



2 Causing damage to the environment



3 A place with many turbines for generating wind power



4 Use a supply of something, such as fuel or energy



5 Fuels based on oil, coal, and gas



6 Energy from sources that do not run out



7 At risk of extinction



8 Equipment needed to turn sunlight into electricity



9 The act of damaging something so badly that it cannot survive or be repaired



10 Changes in the Earth's weather patterns



11 Lower the level of carbon dioxide produced by your actions



12 The increase in the Earth's temperature



13 Energy that does not use fossil fuels



harmful to the environment | renewable energy | climate change | endangered
~~greenhouse gases~~ | extinct | global warming | reduce your carbon footprint | consume
solar panel | alternative energy | destruction | fossil fuels | wind farm

32 Conditional tenses

You can use the third conditional to describe an unreal past, or events that did not happen. This is useful for talking about regrets you have about the past.

New language The third conditional
Aa Vocabulary Environmental threats
New skill Talking about an unreal past

32.1 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE CORRECT TENSES TO MAKE SENTENCES IN THE THIRD CONDITIONAL



If I *had been* **(be)** in London yesterday, I *would have seen* **(would / see)** the parade.

1 
If I _____ **(know)** it was raining, I _____ **(would / bring)** my umbrella.

2 
I _____ **(would / not know)** the party was canceled if he _____ **(not tell)** me.

3 
If I _____ **(arrive)** at the station earlier, I _____ **(would not / miss)** the train.

4 
If they _____ **(study)** more, they _____ **(might / pass)** the exam.

5 
If I _____ **(know)** you didn't like onions, I _____ **(would / not use)** them.

6 
If I _____ **(not go)** to college, I _____ **(might / take)** a gap year.

7 
We _____ **(would / not put)** the box there if we _____ **(know)** that it would fall.

8 
If I _____ **(realize)** he was unhappy, I _____ **(could / talk)** to him about it.

9 
I _____ **(would / wear)** a suit if I _____ **(know)** the CEO was coming to visit us.

10 
If we _____ **(give)** out more samples, we _____ **(would / sell)** more products.

11 
If she _____ **(know)** there was a test, she _____ **(would / prepare)** .

32.2 SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD USING THE CONTRACTED FORMS

If we had known the play was that bad, we would not have gone to see it.

If we'd known the play was that bad, we wouldn't have gone to see it.

1. If we had known there was a train strike on, we would have driven there.

2. If I had not gone to that party, I would not have met my husband.

3. If I had worked harder, I might have been promoted last year.

32.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

If you hadn't come to this school, where would you study?

If you hadn't come to this school, where would you have studied?



1. I would have called you if I had knew you were in town.



2. If we had taken a taxi, we won't have missed our flight.



3. If I would have left the house at nine, I would not have been late for the interview.



4. I would made it home by 7 o'clock if my train had left on time.



5. If we had known the movie was that good, we should have gone to see it.



32.4 READ THE NEWS STORY AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

TIMELY RESCUE

Pete Falconer recounts his harrowing experience in California

Pete Falconer has been mountain climbing since he was seven years old. The 32 year old thought that he had seen everything and was prepared for any situation, but one day that all changed. It was a hot August day in California and Pete was out climbing with a group of friends. "That day started just like any other. If you'd have told me what was going to happen later on, I would never have believed you," Pete told us. He decided to move ahead of the rest of the group and started climbing up the face of a mountain known as The Antelope. If he'd stayed with the others, they would have been able to reach him faster or even catch hold of him to stop him falling, but Pete was out there all alone when he lost his footing and fell down into a canyon. "I knew right away that my leg was broken," Pete continued. "And even if I hadn't been injured, I don't think I would have been able to climb out of that narrow canyon." Pete called out to his friends for help, but they were still a hundred meters away. "After what felt like an hour, but was probably only about 15 minutes, I heard footsteps overhead and called out for help again. My friends quickly realized what had happened and called the emergency services. If I'd been out there on my own, with no reception on my cell phone, I doubt I would have made it out of there alive, but the emergency services came in a helicopter and used specialist equipment to get me out of there. I was so grateful to be alive and I decided that from now on, I'll always stay close to the group when I go out climbing."



Pete is an experienced climber.	True ☑	False ☐	Not given ☐
1 Pete knew that day was going to be different right from the start.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
2 Pete was using the latest climbing equipment.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
3 Pete was climbing a mountain called The Deer.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
4 Pete could have called the emergency services himself.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
5 Pete realized his leg was broken as soon as he fell.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
6 Pete's friends found him after four hours.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐
7 Pete has decided to stay with other climbers in future.	True ☐	False ☐	Not given ☐

32.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

I wish we **had stayed** / ~~**stayed**~~ somewhere closer to downtown. It would've been easier to get around.

1. If only we **had asked** / **asked** for a room on the second or third floor. It wouldn't have been so noisy.
2. I wish we had been able to spend more time at that museum. It **would be** / **was** really interesting.
3. If only we had been there in summer. We **could have taken** / **could take** a boat trip on the river.
4. I wish we **had gone** / **went** to the Eiffel Tower earlier. We might not have had to wait so long.
5. I wish we **had read** / **read** the reviews of that restaurant before we decided to eat there.
6. I love that band. If only we **had known** / **knew** they were doing a concert down the road from the hotel.
7. If only we had taken the train to the airport. We **would have arrived** / **had arrived** there faster.

32.6 FILL IN THE GAPS USING AN "I WISH" OR AN "IF ONLY" SENTENCE



I find this subject so difficult! I wish *I'd studied more* **(study / more)**.

1.  My brother always makes fun of me. If only _____ **(have / a sister instead)**!
2.  Why didn't I take your advice? I wish _____ **(listen / to you)**.
3.  I left my wallet on the train. I wish _____ **(not forget /it)**.
4.  My presentation was awful. If only _____ **(practice / more)**.
5.  I got soaked outside. If only _____ **(bring /my umbrella)**.
6.  I'm so bored at work. I wish _____ **(take / time off)**.
7.  I hate walking. If only _____ **(not crash / my car)**.

33 Past regrets

You can use "should have" or "ought to have" to talk about past mistakes. They both signal that you wish you had done something differently in the past.

New language "Should have" and "ought to have"
Aa Vocabulary Time markers
New skill Expressing regret about the past

33.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING "SHOULD," "SHOULD NOT," OR "OUGHT"

TIP
"Ought not to..." is not incorrect, but is not commonly used.

Your company *should* have reduced its pollution levels.

1. You _____ have separated your waste for recycling.
2. We _____ to have bought fair trade chocolate.
3. She _____ have wasted so much paper.
4. The company _____ have dumped their waste in the river.
5. They _____ have used wood from sustainable forests.
6. We _____ have found out about the risks beforehand.
7. You _____ have changed to energy-saving light bulbs.
8. He _____ have turned the lights off when he left.
9. They _____ to have reduced the amount of traveling their employees do.
10. We _____ have cut down so much of the rainforest.
11. You _____ to have drunk tap water instead of bottled water.
12. She _____ have showered for so long. She's wasting water!
13. They _____ have flown the goods halfway across the world.
14. We _____ to have talked to the local community about this.
15. Governments _____ have made a law to stop this happening.
16. We _____ have buried the waste in that landfill.
17. He _____ to have turned his computer off at night.
18. You _____ have stopped using new plastic bags every time you go shopping.

33.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE SENTENCES



We should not have dumped the waste in the river.

1 

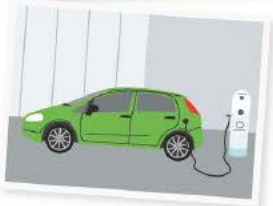
We ought to have dealt with the causes of climate change earlier.

2 

We ought to have switched to greener cars sooner.

3 

We should have protected the wildlife from the oil spill.

4 

We should not have overfished the oceans.

5 

We should not have used so many pesticides in these fields.

6 

We should have thought about the effects of the mine on the river.

33.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

stopped | oil | the | that | into | should | We | have | sea. | all | leaking

We should have stopped all that oil leaking into the sea.

1. built | there. | dam | should | We | the | not | have

2. ought | started | renewable | earlier. | using | We | to | energy | have

3. recycled | They | have | waste | all | materials. | should | their

4. it | We | left | the | as | island | to | was. | ought | have

5. orangutans' | not | destroyed | the | habitat. | We | should | have

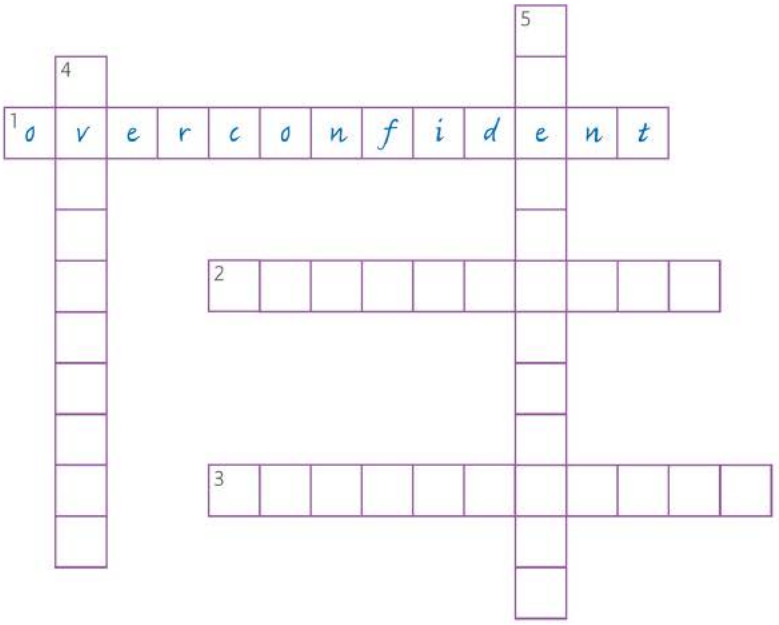
6. impact | have | They | thought | should | the | fish | on | supplies. | about

7. said. | ignored | should | We | not | what | the | have | protesters

8. stored | more | those | chemicals | We | to | carefully. | ought | have

9. the | controls | have | more | had | We | at | power | should | plant.

Aa 33.4 READ THE CLUES AND WRITE THE ANSWERS IN THE CORRECT PLACES ON THE GRID



1. Too sure of yourself
2. Too much weight or pressure
3. People packed in close to each other
4. Too much to do
5. Never takes a risk

overworked | overcautious | ~~overconfident~~ | overloaded | overcrowded

33.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

Initially, it was just the one rig in the Gulf of Mexico that was contaminated.

1. However, _____ the original explosion, a large oil leak was discovered.
2. It is estimated that oil was flowing into the sea at a rate of 62,000 gallons a day _____.
3. Oil continued to flow into the ocean at this rate _____ the next six weeks.
4. Efforts were made to stop the flow of oil _____ that time, but none of them proved successful.
5. _____, the oil spill has become known as one of the worst manmade disasters in recent history.

Since then | by that time | throughout | ~~Initially~~ | following | during

34 Actions and consequences

Unlike many parts of speech, prepositions often have little meaning in themselves, but work to change the meaning of the words around them.

New language Dependent prepositions
Aa Vocabulary Actions and consequences
New skill Changing sentence stress

Aa 34.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE DEPENDENT PREPOSITION PHRASES IN THE PANEL

Is he a famous scientist? I've never _heard of_ him before.

1. I'm _____ getting trapped in an elevator, so I always take the stairs.
2. In recent years, there's been a huge _____ smartphone ownership.
3. My children sometimes _____ who gets to watch TV.
4. I always _____ a window seat when I fly so I can look out the window.
5. We'll never _____ how to raise children.
6. I think he'll win. All of the signs _____ his direction.
7. There's been a _____ the number of letters people have written in the last decade.
8. The economic situation had the _____ pushing house prices down.
9. There's a _____ interest in the project among the people in my team.
10. I'm afraid I'm going to be _____ our appointment this morning.
11. They're really _____ all of the opportunities they've been given.
12. We _____ my previous work experience and career goals.
13. There's been a _____ the number of people watching live television in recent years.
14. When I call my sister, we _____ absolutely everything that's been going on in my life.

talked about ~~heard of~~ increase in talk about effect of
afraid of late for decline in argue about decline in
lack of point in agree about grateful for ask for

34.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE CORRECT PREPOSITIONS

There's been a massive **increase** *in* the number of people using social media.

1. My husband and I sometimes **argue** _____ whose turn it is to do the dishes.
2. Frank is never **late** _____ any meetings in the office.
3. The course was canceled due to a **lack** _____ interest by students.
4. I know a lot of people who are **afraid** _____ spiders and snakes.
5. She's very **grateful** _____ the chance to study medicine in the US.
6. Marlon will **talk** _____ his travels in the Amazon rainforest this evening.
7. I'm so **grateful** _____ the opportunity you have given me.

34.3 READ THE BLOG AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

Linda went to Costa Rica this year.
True ☐ **False** ☑ **Not given** ☐

1. Ecotourism is an option for people traveling alone.
   True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
2. Linda found out about ecotourism online.
   True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
3. Linda usually doesn't like being high up.
   True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
4. Linda's family wanted to go bird watching in Costa Rica.
   True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
5. Ecotourism has become more popular in recent years.
   True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
6. Evidence suggests that ecotourism has a positive impact.
   True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐



Travel Blog

HOME | ENTRIES | ABOUT | CONTACT

POSTED MONDAY, 12:25AM

ECOTOURISM

My name's Linda and last year my family and I went to Costa Rica, where we discovered ecotourism. It's suitable for solo travelers, couples, and families.

When deciding on our vacation last year, we all agreed that we wanted to trek through rainforests and see animals living in the wild. Our travel agent then suggested ecotourism in Costa Rica, which is about visiting parts of the world where you can experience interesting or unique wildlife and cultural heritage while having a minimal impact on the natural environment and the local culture. It's popularity has increased in recent years, as more people are realizing the importance of responsible travel.

34.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT PREPOSITIONS



There's no doubt that an increase in fuel consumption leads **to** / ~~**in**~~ higher pollution levels.

1 

We are currently searching **for** / **about** a suitable location for a new offshore wind farm.

2 

The Prime Minister apologized **to** / **for** the public for not giving them all of the facts.

3 

I'm so bored **about** / **with** news stories about how the Earth is getting hotter. It's freezing today!

4 

If we reduce the amount of packaging we use, that will result **to** / **in** us having less waste.

34.5 UNDERLINE THE WORDS YOU NEED TO STRESS AND SAY EACH SENTENCE OUT LOUD

We can't undo what humans have already done to the environment.

[It's not possible to change this.]

1 Environmentally-friendly farming practices help farmers grow more food.

[Other farming practices don't.]

2 This government isn't going to stand by and do nothing about climate change.

[Other governments have.]

3 What changes can you make in your everyday life to make it a healthier one?

[I'm just interested in what you can do and your life.]

4 There isn't a future for the nuclear power industry in this country.

[I know you think there is.]

34.6 REWRITE THE HIGHLIGHTED PHRASES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

YOUR FOOD

Food security

Explaining food security and related concepts

One of the big issues facing governments around the world this century is food security. Just in case you've never heard for it before, when we talk over food security, we mean a state where everyone has access to an amount of food that is suitable of their needs. Those of us lucky enough to be food secure should be grateful over it because a lot of people live in a state of food insecurity and this number is set to grow. Long-term food insecurity leads in hunger and large-scale food-insecurity becomes famine when it has the effect at forcing more than 20 percent of a country's population to live without the food they need.

Experts can't agree for exactly how many people worldwide are food insecure, but the evidence points at the direction of it being over 1.2 billion and we're likely to see an increase of that number in the years to come.

The expression "food desert" refers to places with limited access to healthy, nutritious food. "Food deserts" tend to be low-income areas and are found in developed as well as developing countries. People living in "food deserts" become used to this lack in choice and, even when there is an option, they're more likely to ask of a burger and chips than a fresh salad at a restaurant. It's almost as if



they're afraid over healthy eating. The results are high obesity levels as people eat large amount of high-fat and high-sugar foods with little nutritional value. Social factors may be to blame in developed countries and especially the decline of the number of families who sit down together to eat a home-cooked meal.

Politicians have argued on what the best way to deal with food security is, but they haven't reached a consensus on what action to take yet.

heard of

1 _____

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

6 _____

7 _____

8 _____

9 _____

10 _____

11 _____

12 _____

13 _____

35 Few or little?

The words used to describe quantities vary according to a number of factors, including whether you are talking about something countable or uncountable.

New language "Few," "little," "fewer," "less"
Aa Vocabulary Nature and environment
New skill Describing quantities

35.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



I'm so excited. I've got ~~few~~ / a few hours to explore the city tonight.

1 
I'm not rich, but I try to donate little / a little money to charity every month.

2 
Sadly, there are few / a few Sumatran tigers left in the world today.

3 
I have little / a little patience for people who are always late. I'm always on time!

4 
There are very few / a few people I would lend money to. But my brother is one of them.

5 
Little / A little can be done to completely stop climate change in our time.

6 
Do you need some help to finish that report? I have little / a little time I can spare.

7 
There are few / a few paintings in the museum I haven't seen. Can we stay a bit longer?

8 
There's little / a little point in explaining it to Jen. She never listens to what I say.

9 
I know you're on a diet, but would you like little / a little bit of chocolate?

10 
There are very few / a few old buildings left in this city. It's sad that we've lost so much history.

11 
I don't have lots of friends, but I've got few / a few that I'm really close to.

35.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	People are spending much less	courses than it did 10 years ago.
1	There are fewer job opportunities	earning less money than before.
2	People have less time for	hobbies and sports these days.
3	Fewer people are interested	money on organic food than expected.
4	Our university offers fewer	luggage with me on vacation.
5	I wish I'd brought less	in local history these days.
6	Kelly changed jobs, but she's now	than there used to be.

35.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

There are fewer whales in the ocean. ☑
There are less whales in the ocean. ☐

1 Fewer money is spent on care for the elderly. ☐
Less money is spent on care for the elderly. ☐

2 We all need to use fewer electricity. ☐
We all need to use less electricity. ☐

3 Fewer people are worried about pollution. ☐
Less people are worried about pollution. ☐

4 I wish I had fewer work to do. ☐
I wish I had less work to do. ☐

5 People are having fewer children. ☐
People are having less children. ☐

6 Fewer people enjoy gardening nowadays. ☐
Less people enjoy gardening nowadays. ☐

35.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS



Stuart Brookes is fighting to save the endangered red squirrel.

Stuart Brookes began his fight 15 years ago.
True ☑ **False** ☐

1 The planned road was not close to his home.
True ☐ **False** ☐

2 The road would have helped protect the squirrel.
True ☐ **False** ☐

3 There are 2.5 million gray squirrels in the UK.
True ☐ **False** ☐

4 There are just 140,000 red squirrels in the UK.
True ☐ **False** ☐

5 The initial group had fewer than five members.
True ☐ **False** ☐

35.5 FILL IN THE GAPS USING "FEW" OR "BIT"

I have quite a *few* questions.

1. She has been working for quite a _____ years.
2. I've earned quite a _____ of money.
3. Amal has quite a _____ of work experience.
4. There are quite a _____ students in this class.
5. I've spent quite a _____ of time on this report.
6. Jo has made quite a _____ friends at university.
7. There's quite a _____ of rice left over.
8. There are quite a _____ things I have to do.
9. It took quite a _____ of effort to finish the race.
10. I've got quite a _____ pairs of sneakers.
11. We've got quite a _____ vacations planned.
12. She gave me quite a _____ of useful advice.
13. There's quite a _____ of garbage on the floor.

35.6 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

We go on holiday to France in ~~**fewer than**~~ / **less than** four weeks.

1. The park is empty. There must be **fewer than** / **less than** 10 people here.
2. My daughter's school is tiny. It has **fewer than** / **less than** five teachers.
3. Seattle is **fewer than** / **less than** 20 miles from here. It won't take long to drive there.
4. Applicants should supply no **fewer than** / **less than** two references.
5. The plane leaves in **fewer than** / **less than** half an hour. We'd better hurry!
6. I've got **fewer than** / **less than** $2 in cash. Could you lend me some money, please?
7. The company had to cut some jobs, so we now have **fewer than** / **less than** 15 employees.
8. It's **fewer than** / **less than** 10 minutes until the game starts. I'm so excited!
9. I'm afraid the course is canceled because **fewer than** / **less than** 10 people signed up.
10. Jeremy is being paid **fewer than** / **less than** all his friends. He wants a new job.
11. I always pack light. My suitcase weighs **fewer than** / **less than** 12 pounds.
12. It's very disappointing that **fewer than** / **less than** eight countries signed the agreement.

36 Vocabulary

Aa 36.1 TRADITION, LUCK, AND SUPERSTITION WRITE THE PHRASES FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

A single piece of good fortune

a stroke of luck



1. Hope for something to happen



2. A group of values



3. Have strong feelings that something is not right



4. A positive / negative sign about something that will happen



5. Talk about other people, often in a negative way



6. Information or news transmitted by people telling other people



7. Say something indirectly



8. Good fortune with no skill involved



9. Stories, sayings, and traditions from a certain area or culture



10. A modern story which is untrue but believed by many



11. Have good fortune the first time you do something



12. To start / continue saying things that may or may not be true



13. Think that something exists or is true



gossip · make a wish · beginner's luck · have serious misgivings / doubts · pure luck
~~a stroke of luck~~ · start / spread a rumor · word of mouth · drop a hint · folklore
set of beliefs · urban myth · good / bad omen · believe in something

37 Past possibility

You can use a variety of language to talk about possible events in the past, and to indicate whether you agree or disagree with speculation.

New language "Might / may / could" in the past
Aa Vocabulary Urban myths
New skill Talking about past possibility

37.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

I feel a bit sick. I **might** / ~~**may not**~~ / ~~**could not**~~ have eaten something bad earlier.

1. Chris hasn't turned up for training. He **might** / **might not** / **could not** have realized it was today.
2. Your phone **may** / **might not** / **could not** have been stolen. Have you checked in your desk?
3. I found a wallet. It **might** / **might not** / **could not** have been dropped by someone walking to the station.
4. Liz isn't answering her emails. She **may** / **may not** / **could not** have gone away.
5. I **may** / **might not** / **could not** have forgotten to send Lola a birthday card. I'm not sure.
6. That strange noise **could** / **may not** / **could not** have been a fox outside. There are a lot of them in this area.
7. I'm sure Les **may** / **might not** / **could not** have sent such a rude message. He's usually such a gentleman.
8. Jen and Will are late. They **might** / **might not** / **could not** have missed the train.
9. Helena **may** / **might not** / **could not** have grown 20 inches last year. That's too much in 12 months!
10. That bag is a fake. You **might** / **might not** / **could not** have bought a real one. It was far too cheap.
11. You **may** / **might not** / **could not** have caught the flu. It might just be a bad cold.
12. I **may** / **may not** / **could not** have left my glasses at work. I can't find them.
13. You **might** / **might not** / **could not** need an operation. You might just need to take some medicine.
14. You **could** / **might not** / **could not** have seen Sally in town yesterday. She's in China.
15. It **might** / **might not** / **could not** have been Sally I saw in town. But it was someone who looks like her.
16. Your purse **could** / **may not** / **could not** have been stolen when you were waiting in line at the market.
17. We **may** / **may not** / **could not** have bought the right ingredients for the cake. I'm not sure. Let's check.

37.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



They may have forgotten to turn down the hob.

1 

They might have forgotten to turn the iron off.

2 

They may not have remembered to close the window.

3 

She couldn't have gone out. All her clothes are dirty!

4 

Anyone could have left the freezer door open.

5 

They might have made a big dinner for lots of people.

6 

They may have had a party.

37.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



My arm is red and itchy. I might have been bitten by a mosquito. ☑
My arm is red and itchy. I could not have been bitten by a mosquito. ☐

1 

My car has a scratch on it. Someone could reverse into it in the parking lot. ☐
My car has a scratch on it. Someone could have reversed into it in the parking lot. ☐

2 

Your email could have gone into my junk folder. I'll check again. ☐
Your email could gone into my junk folder. I'll check again. ☐

3 

You may have visited my old school. It was turned into an office in 2012. ☐
You could not have visited my old school. It was turned into an office in 2012. ☐

4 

You might have spoken to Jill on the phone. She's flying to Brazil right now. ☐
You could not have spoken to Jill on the phone. She's flying to Brazil right now. ☐

5 

I might have said the right thing to Annabel. She looked a bit upset. ☐
I might not have said the right thing to Annabel. She looked a bit upset. ☐

37.4 REWRITE THESE STATEMENTS USING REPORTED SPEECH

I saw it with my own eyes! **(tell)** = He *told me that he had seen it with his own eyes.*

1 We couldn't believe what we were seeing. **(say)** = They _____

2 I'm not lying. **(say)** = She _____

3 I don't believe in things like ghosts. **(tell)** = She _____

4 I heard a terrible scream last night. **(say)** = He _____

5 I'll never stay in a castle ever again. **(say)** = She _____

6 I took a photo and there is a ghost in it. **(say)** = She _____

7 We had a lot of fun on Halloween. **(tell)** = He _____

8 We were so scared that we couldn't move. **(tell)** = They _____

37.5 REWRITE THE QUESTIONS AS REPORTED QUESTIONS USING "I ASKED"

What are you doing tonight? **(she)**
I asked her what she was doing tonight.

1. How much was your new jacket? **(he)**
2. Do you feel tired? **(he)**
3. Are they going to get married? **(she)**
4. What did you do last weekend? **(he)**
5. Is Carina good enough to play for the team? **(she)**
6. Are you busy right now? **(he)**
7. Where did you go on vacation? **(he)**
8. Will you call me back when you're free? **(she)**
9. Is Robert the new office manager? **(she)**

37.6 WRITE REPORTED QUESTIONS TO MATCH THE ANSWERS

She said she was looking for her husband.
I asked her what she was doing.

1. She said her favorite food was pasta.
2. He told me he was nervous about the exam.
3. He said he played tennis at the sports center.
4. He told me she wasn't easy to talk to.
5. She said they weren't a difficult team to play.
6. They told me they were away next week.
7. He said he was sad because his cat was missing.

38 Speculation and deduction

You can use modal verbs to describe past events with varying degrees of certainty. These constructions are useful for speculating about events you haven't witnessed.

New language More uses for modal verbs
Aa Vocabulary Phrasal verbs with "out"
New skill Speculating and making deductions

38.1 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

They can have been serious. There's no such thing as the Loch Ness monster.
They can't have been serious. There's no such thing as the Loch Ness monster.



1. Someone could have took my coat because they thought it was theirs.



2. They could have already left. That's the only explanation.



3. He couldn't have wrote such a good essay without any help from his teachers.



4. There must have been an accident, but I'm not really sure.



5. I know it's unlikely, but someone must have found the money and handed it in.



6. He might have gave me the wrong directions. He doesn't know this town very well.



7. He couldn't known that they would ask him a question about that. That's unfair.



8. It can't have be a ghost. They don't really exist!



9. She must have be imagining it. There's nobody upstairs.

38.2 MATCH THE PAIRS OF SENTENCES TOGETHER

It's twenty past two now.	That's why our letters keep being returned.
1 Have you checked your phone?	Nobody called Sheila lives here.
2 He's not answering the door.	Is there anything on the arrivals board?
3 I still can't get through to her.	He must have forgotten about our meeting.
4 They must have changed their address.	She could have tried to call you.
5 Have you looked in the top drawer?	They must be here somewhere.
6 Their plane might have been delayed.	She might have left her phone at home.
7 You must have dialled the wrong number.	He might have left already.
8 We may have lost James and Katie.	He might have left the keys there.
9 He can't have thrown the tickets away!	They're no longer following behind us.

38.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

We ~~can't~~ / ~~couldn't~~ / **may** have stayed too long. I think they were glad when we left.

1 I **can't** / **couldn't** / **might** have won the competition if my entry had arrived in time.

2 They **can't** / **may** / **might** have lost their way. They know this area very well.

3 I **can't** / **couldn't** / **must** have done something to upset her. She's not speaking to me.

4 She **couldn't** / **may** / **must** have opened that door. She doesn't have a key for it.

5 They **can't** / **couldn't** / **may** have destroyed those documents. We haven't found them.

38.4 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE CORRECT FORM

He couldn't *have been* **(be)** at that meeting because he was in France at the time.

1. You must _____ **(deal with)** a lot of customers over the last 20 years.
2. Mom and Dad might _____ **(hide)** our presents in this cupboard.
3. He can't _____ **(leave)** without saying goodbye. He must still be here.
4. The children might _____ **(outgrow)** these toys. They prefer video games now.
5. They must _____ **(run)** very fast to finish the race in such good time.
6. They can't _____ **(tell)** you everything. There's a lot more that you need to know.
7. The students might _____ **(go)** to the classroom we were in last semester instead.

38.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

Jason and Valerie are talking about their colleague Richard, who they cannot find in the office.



Valerie thinks Richard couldn't have gone to the cafeteria.
True ☐ **False** ☑

1. Jason says Richard may have gone to see a client.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
2. Valerie thinks Richard may have gone home early.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
3. Valerie says Richard must have gone to buy a present for his wife.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
4. Valerie says Richard couldn't have left a note for Jason on his desk.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
5. Jason thinks Richard might have forgotten their meeting.
   True ☐ **False** ☐

39 Mixed conditionals

You can use different types of conditional statements to talk about hypothetical situations. Mixed conditionals use more than one of these types in the same statement.

New language Mixed conditionals
Aa Vocabulary Personality traits
New skill Talking about hypothetical situations

39.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL



If you ___were___ fitter, you would have been able to keep running.

1 

If he _____ more organized, he wouldn't have been late for work again today.

2 

If I had lost my job, _____ living with my parents again now.

3 

If he had kept on learning English, he _____ fluent by now.

4 

If they _____ how stormy it would be, they wouldn't be outside today.

5 

If your aunt hadn't lent you money, you _____ buy a house now.

6 

If he _____ more confident, he wouldn't have failed his driving test.

7 

If you had gone to college, you might _____ a good job by now.

8 

If they had finished painting the bedroom, we _____ sleep in the loft tonight.

I would be	were	wouldn't have to	were	wouldn't be able to
~~were~~	have	would be	had known	

39.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	He wouldn't be so good at swimming	if his Dad had shown him how to do it.
1	I would wear my coat	you would not be where you are today.
2	If we had saved more money,	you wouldn't think that the test was easy.
3	If you had believed what they said,	if he hadn't trained so hard over the years.
4	He wouldn't be so bad at cooking	if she had bought herself a new watch.
5	He might be more patient	we wouldn't have to be so thrifty now.
6	If he had reserved a seat on the train,	if I hadn't forgotten it.
7	She wouldn't always be late	he wouldn't have to stand for two hours.
8	If you had read all of the questions,	if he hadn't already been waiting so long.

39.3 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT TENSE

You could be a professional violin player today if you had *practiced* more as a child.

1. He would feel better if he had _____ a little more last night.
2. If you had _____ for the interview properly, you wouldn't be so nervous now.
3. You wouldn't be stuck here if you had _____ the hotel staff about the problem.
4. If you had _____ off earlier, you wouldn't have to rush so much now.
5. He would be less stressed if he had _____ more time out to relax.
6. If they hadn't _____ our luggage to the wrong terminal, we would be home by now.
7. She might not be such a good typist if she hadn't _____ so much time at the computer.

sleep set spend take ~~practice~~ send tell prepare

39.4 REWRITE THE MIXED CONDITIONAL SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE HIGHLIGHTED ERRORS

If you **had be** there, you would have a Christmas present, too.
If you had been there, you would have a Christmas present, too.



1. If he **have told** me how upset he was, I would still be there comforting him.



2. If I were a good cook, I **would invited** you to lunch at our place by now.



3. He **would have stroke** Fido if he wasn't so scared of dogs.



4. If they weren't going to France tomorrow, they **would have went** to your party.



5. We **could have go** to the theater if we weren't busy tonight.



6. I would be surprised if Katherine **had want** me to go to the ball with her.



7. If the teacher were here, she **would have tell** you all to be quiet.



8. If I **had move** to America, I might be rich and happy now.



9. I would be happy to help you if I **haven't already agreed** to help Jack.



10. If they **had learn** to ski, they could go on a skiing vacation next year.



11. If we **had look** at the map earlier, we wouldn't be so lost!



12. If I had taken that job, I **would been** earning a lot more money now.

40 Adding "-ever" to question words

Adding "-ever" to question words changes their meaning. These new words modify the question words to mean "no matter" or it "doesn't matter."

New language Words with "-ever"
Aa Vocabulary Chance and weather phrases
New skill Joining a clause to a sentence

40.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL



Whoever James marries will be a very lucky lady. He's handsome, intelligent, and charming.

1 
I can't remember what we decided about the color, but I'm sure it'll be bright, _____ it is.

2 
_____ I go on vacation abroad, I always try the dishes that are typical for that country.

3 
I'm sure the new boss will do a good job and treat everyone fairly, _____ he or she is.

4 
They always believe that they will win the lottery one day, _____ small the chances are.

5 
She always ignores any criticism she gets, _____ anyone says about her.

6 
_____ I fly, I always make sure that I get to the airport two hours before my flight time.

7 
I don't think I'll be able to find the answer to this math problem, _____ hard I try.

8 
We could talk about this on the phone or I could arrange a meeting, _____ you prefer.

9 
He always finds the time to call and say goodnight to me _____ he is in the world.

whoever	Whenever	whichever	however	wherever
whatever	however	Whenever	whatever	~~Whoever~~

40.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE

Whatever / ~~Whichever~~ you decide, you can be sure that we'll support you.

1. **Whoever** / **However** completes the questionnaire first will win an exciting prize.
2. We always stay in touch by text message or email **whenever** / **wherever** we're apart.
3. I won't give up until I reach the top of the mountain, **whichever** / **however** hard it gets.
4. I can pick you up at the airport or you can take the train, **whichever** / **whoever** you prefer.
5. I'm not going to put up with this kind of behavior from him, **whatever** / **whoever** he is.
6. We can have Chinese or Italian food or something else, **whatever** / **wherever** you want to do.
7. I always take a little first aid kit with me **whenever** / **whatever** I go on vacation.
8. I'm sure she'll look beautiful in her dress, **whichever** / **whatever** one she chooses.
9. She's determined to change his mind about the Nigeria project, **however** / **whatever** long it takes.

40.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

Let's meet on Friday the 13th or the next day,		however often they prove to be false.
1	I always fear I'm going to have a bad day	I give them something blue for luck.
2	Whatever happens in my life,	however strange it looks.
3	Whoever told you that	whichever you prefer.
4	My mother believes in superstitions,	she thinks that it'll bring her bad luck.
5	Whenever a family member gets married,	whenever I walk under a ladder.
6	This horse shoe will bring me luck,	my superstitions bring me comfort.
7	She always wears that ring,	must be very superstitious.
8	Whenever she sees a black cat,	however difficult life gets.

Aa 40.4 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE PHRASES

	decline an invitation until a later date	right as rain
1	no matter what happens	throw caution to the wind
2	behave recklessly	take a rain check
3	extremely happy	a bolt from the blue
4	something sudden and unexpected	come rain or shine
5	do something before someone else does it	on cloud nine
6	healthy or well	steal someone's thunder

40.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

I'm going to go to the festival this weekend, come rain and shine.
I'm going to go to the festival this weekend, come rain or shine.

1 That's a bolt of the blue. I had no idea she was planning to leave the country.

2 I'm going to throwing caution to the wind and just buy that expensive car!

3 My daughter was ill with the flu last week, but she's right than rain now.

4 I'm afraid I'll have to make a rain check on that. I'm really busy this week.

5 Whenever I give a sales presentation, Maureen always tries to steel my thunder.

41 Vocabulary

Aa 41.1 MEDIA AND CELEBRITY WRITE THE PHRASES FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

An interview that no other source has obtained
exclusive interview



1 Be known by most people



2 Something designed to get your attention quickly



3 The first night of a show or film



4 A carpet for important guests to walk or stand on at an event



5 Photographers who take pictures of famous people without their consent



6 A competition with performances by entertainers showcasing their skills



7 Become a famous person



8 A show based on or around real-life events



9 A very rapid rise, often in a career



10 Make something more dramatic or exciting than it is



11 The popular culture which surrounds famous people



12 News that is widely reported



13 The large text at the top of a a newspaper page



celebrity culture | become a celebrity | paparazzi | newspaper headline | red carpet
talent show | ~~exclusive interview~~ | opening night | sensationalize | attention-grabbing
headline news | be a household name | reality show | meteoric rise

42 Reporting with passives

One way to distance yourself from facts is to use the passive voice and reporting verbs. This device is commonly used in newspaper and television journalism.

New language Passive voice for reporting
Aa Vocabulary Reporting language
New skill Distancing yourself from facts

42.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL



It has been *claimed* that eating processed meat is as dangerous as smoking.

1 
These items have been _____ in our new factory.

2 
It has been _____ that a hurricane will hit the coast this evening.

3 
Those tests have been _____ out in our new laboratory next door.

4 
Following the meeting, it has been _____ that we will increase our prices.

5 
He has been _____ by the pharmaceutical company as their new CEO.

6 
Our products have been _____ all over the world since 1995.

7 
The proposal has been _____ by all the members of the board.

8 
There are _____ to have been a series of crimes committed by this gang.

9 
It has long been _____ that money isn't his main motivation.

reported	produced	exported	carried	rejected
believed	~~claimed~~	alleged	named	decided

42.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	She is understood to have been	there will be massive job cuts.
1	It is understood that there	would recall its latest products.
2	Our organization is thought to	some nice walking trails around here.
3	It has been reported that	working in Ethiopia for the last six months.
4	It was announced that the company	be a trailblazer in the area we work in.
5	He is thought to have been	have been many flight cancelations.
6	There are said to be	among the most beautiful countries.
7	It is hoped that the next generation	the most successful CEO we ever had.
8	Norway is believed to be	will continue the work we've been doing.

42.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Safety glasses must ~~worn~~ / **be worn** at all times in the laboratory.

1. This essay **should have been** / **should be** handed in two weeks ago!
2. Unfortunately, the project couldn't **completed** / **be completed** on time.
3. It must **have taken** / **be taken** us four hours to get here because of all the traffic jams.
4. She must **have thought** / **be thought** that the meeting started at 11am instead of 10am.
5. Any feedback you may have should **sent** / **be sent** to our administrator.
6. The machine may **have broken down** / **have broke down** because there was some dust in it.
7. Traffic could **been redirected** / **be redirected** here during the festival.
8. Free samples can **obtained** / **be obtained** from our store on the first floor.
9. The booking should **have been made** / **be made** earlier. Then we would have better seats.

42.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

It was hoped that we could resolve the differences between them without any arguments. ☑
There was hoped that we could resolve the differences between them without any arguments. ☐

1. The bell must have rang 10 times, but he still didn't come to the door. ☐
   The bell must have rung 10 times, but he still didn't come to the door. ☐
2. There has been understood to be a car accident on Station Road this evening. ☐
   There is understood to have been a car accident on Station Road this evening. ☐
3. All of the books we sent should have been delivered to the venue by now. ☐
   All of the books we sent should be delivered to the venue by now. ☐
4. It was announced yesterday that students can now apply for scholarships for next year. ☐
   It has been announced yesterday that students can now apply for scholarships for next year. ☐
5. The driver is thought to have lost his way while driving from the airport back to the city. ☐
   The driver is thought to have lose his way while driving from the airport back to the city. ☐

42.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

A business news channel is reporting on the latest grants announced by the government.

Who will receive these new series of grants?
- **The government** ☐
- **Young entrepreneurs** ☑
- **Students** ☐

1. When did the government agree to this measure?
   - **Today** ☐
   - **Yesterday** ☐
   - **Last year** ☐
2. Who set up hundreds of companies last year?
   - **Young people** ☐
   - **Established businessmen** ☐
   - **The government** ☐
3. When will the government start awarding grants?
   - **Today** ☐
   - **The start of next year** ☐
   - **This isn't clear yet** ☐
4. How do entrepreneurs feel about this measure?
   - **They welcome it** ☐
   - **They're not sure about it** ☐
   - **They will see what happens** ☐
5. How will this measure affect business growth?
   - **Negatively** ☐
   - **Positively** ☐
   - **It will remain unchanged** ☐

42.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES USING THE PASSIVE VOICE

He has extensively rewritten the text to make it a lot clearer.
The text *has been extensively rewritten to make it a lot clearer.*



1. We bottled a million gallons of water at this plant last year.
   A million gallons of water _____



2. Business travelers rent our cars at the airport.
   Our cars _____



3. We could organize another conference for next September.
   Another conference _____



4. Our chefs make all of our dishes by hand.
   All of our dishes _____



5. They hope that the supplier will accept the new terms and conditions.
   It is hoped _____



6. According to reports, the government will change traffic laws this year.
   It is reported _____



7. We service all of the company cars in this garage.
   All of the company cars _____



8. A Spanish company installed the solar panels on our roof last month.
   The solar panels on our roof _____



9. Everyone agrees that he would make an excellent team leader.
   It is agreed _____



10. They could have unloaded the trucks in half the time that they actually took.
    The trucks _____



11. She announced that she would be stepping down from the committee.
    It was announced _____



12. Some students claimed that they didn't get enough help from their teachers.
    It was claimed _____

43 Making indirect statements

Sometimes you may wish to avoid giving definite facts or personal opinions. This is known as "hedging." Certain words and indirect statements can help you with this.

New language Indirect statements
Aa Vocabulary Hedging language
New skill Expressing uncertainty

43.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS AND PHRASES IN THE PANEL

Often people use hedging language if they do not have exact figures.

1. _____ 40,000 spectators watched the game at the national stadium.
2. The figures _____ that our population is aging rapidly.
3. Harris Mode is _____ the most handsome man alive today.
4. To _____, we can all do more to improve the state of our health.
5. _____ that unless we stop climate change, the ice caps will melt.
6. It has been _____ that the witness lied during the trial.
7. People who purchase violent video games _____ to be young men.
8. _____ like we've missed the bus. We're going to be late again.
9. It _____ that the jewelry had been stolen in the early hours of the morning.

appeared	tend	arguably	indicate	It looks
~~Often~~	suggested	Approximately	some extent	It has been said

43.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	These new figures indicate	is going to make a loss this year.
1	The teacher suggested that	I tend to get a headache.
2	If I don't have coffee in the morning,	they don't have the time to exercise.
3	There are approximately 15,000	a downward turn in sales.
4	It appears that the company	people in the town where I live.
5	The soccer players allegedly	accepted money to lose games.
6	It has been said that	Lilian should expect good exam results.
7	People often say	there's no fool like an old fool.

43.3 SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD, CHOOSING THE CORRECT WORDS

How disappointing! It would **appear** / ~~**tend**~~ that someone has eaten the cupcakes.

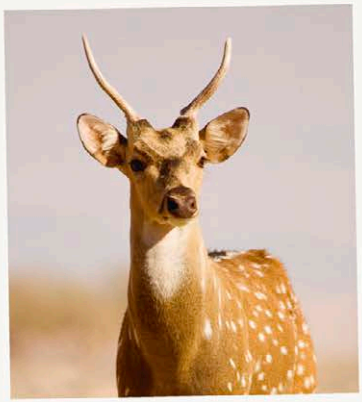
1. The test results **suggest** / **tend** that this is a new kind of bacteria.
2. **To some extent** / **Often**, I'm glad Gina canceled her party. I don't feel very well.
3. Jess **seems** / **suggests** to have gone home early.
4. Carren Lake is **arguably** / **approximately** the most successful British tennis player ever.
5. It **looks** / **appears** that we have no food left in the fridge.
6. It would **tend** / **seem** that Clarissa is not answering my text messages.

43.4 READ THE ARTICLE AND WRITE ANSWERS TO THE QUESTIONS AS FULL SENTENCES

OH, DEER!

The curious incident of a deer that walked into a hospital

News stations in Banff have been reporting the story of arguably the smartest deer in Canada. Medical staff at Banff General Hospital were surprised to see what appeared to be a deer walking into the Emergency Room yesterday. It was indeed a deer, who seemed to have been injured in an accident on the roads. The deer must have walked approximately 10 kilometers from the scene of the accident to get to the hospital. Medical staff were at hand to pick him up and take him to a nearby vet, who said it looked like the animal would make a full recovery.



What is the story that the news stations have been reporting?

The news stations have been reporting about a deer that walked into a hospital.

1. Where did the incident take place?

2. What surprised the medical staff at the hospital?

3. What seemed to be the reason for the deer's injury?

4. How many kilometers must the deer have walked to get to the hospital?

5. What did the medical staff do once the deer got to the hospital?

6. What did the vet say about the animal's condition?

43.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS



A news item on the radio talks about a criminal who made a foolish mistake.

Alfie Richardson was found guilty of forging paintings. **True** ☐ **False** ☑ **Not given** ☐

1. He committed a robbery about once every six months. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
2. Richardson's mistake seems to be that he got lazy. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
3. There were approximately 20 customers in the post office. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
4. Richardson erased everything on the phone before he used it. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
5. The selfies Richardson took were uploaded to an online account. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
6. The photos led the police to Alfie Richardson. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

43.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

There are approximate 25 students in my class.
There are approximately 25 students in my class.

1. To some extents, the project we worked on last month was a waste of time.

2. It would seem than someone has hacked into our database.

3. He has alleged stolen $2 million from his employer.

4. It has been say that absence makes the heart grow fonder.

5. It appear that you have forgotten to pay your bill.

44 Adding emphasis

You can add emphasis, or even a sense of drama, to a statement through grammar and pronunciation. Inversion is one effective way to do this.

New language Inversion after adverbials
Aa Vocabulary Media and celebrity
New skill Adding emphasis to statements

44.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Not ~~when~~ / **until** I was 18 did I start to cook for myself.

1 

Only after trying to reach the summit three times **he did** / **did he** give up.

2 

Little **she does** / **does she** know that we're planning a surprise party for her.

3 

Only **when** / **until** it starts to snow do I stop gardening.

4 

Not since the 1980s **the team has** / **has the team** won a major trophy.

44.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

Not only is the hotel luxurious,

1 Only after living there for five years
2 Not only is she a great mother,
3 Little did they realize
4 Only when she read their stories
5 Not since his childhood
6 Only after studying the instructions

did he understand how it worked.
that they were in for a big surprise.
did she realize how well they can write.
but it's also in a great location.
did he master the Spanish language.
but she's also a top business executive.
had he ridden a skateboard.

44.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Only when she moved away from home did she become independent. ☑
Only when she moved away from home she did become independent. ☐

1. Little I did know that I would meet my future husband that evening. ☐
   Little did I know that I would meet my future husband that evening. ☐
2. Not only is he a talented pianist, is he also a writer. ☐
   Not only is he a talented pianist, he is also a writer. ☐
3. Only until he came on stage did the fans start to scream. ☐
   Only when he came on stage did the fans start to scream. ☐
4. Only after living there for six months they did talk to the neighbors. ☐
   Only after living there for six months did they talk to the neighbors. ☐
5. The movie was also entertaining, not only informative. ☐
   Not only was the movie informative, but it was also entertaining. ☐

44.4 USING THE PROMPTS, REWRITE THE SENTENCES TO SHIFT THE EMPHASIS

I trained for nine months and then I felt ready to run the marathon. **[only after]**
Only after training for nine months did I feel ready to run the marathon.

1. My son asked me to help him with his homework the moment I arrived home. **[no sooner]**

2. She didn't know that she would stay for 40 years when she started working there. **[little]**

3. This is the first time that people from both communities have worked together. **[never before]**

4. The last time I cried this much at a film was when I went to see *Sally's Song*. **[not since]**

5. You don't often see a dog and cat that get along with each other so well. **[rarely]**

44.5 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL

Not only *do we* have a buffet, you can also order from the menu.

1. _____ have I seen so many people running together.
2. Little _____ know that we would end up living in Italy.
3. _____ had I reached the station than the train arrived.
4. Not since 1988 _____ had such a hot summer.
5. _____ did she know that she would win an award that evening.
6. Never before _____ a child who loves reading as much as she does.
7. Only when I'd had time to recover _____ realize what a lucky escape I'd had.
8. Only after experiencing it ourselves _____ understand how difficult it is.
9. _____ preparing for six months did they feel ready to take the exam.
10. _____ my teenage years have I been so excited about a concert.
11. _____ had he started to speak when someone interrupted him.
12. _____ do we produce these dolls here, but we make them all by hand.

Only after	~~do we~~	Rarely	Little	did I	could we	have I seen
did we	Hardly	No sooner	Not only	Not since	have we	

44.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS



A news station is reporting on a fire that broke out during an awards ceremony in Los Angeles.

More people attended the ceremony this year than ever before. **True** ☑ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

1. The guests were able to go into the auditorium at 6pm. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
2. The fire started in the middle of the ceremony. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
3. About 5,000 people were evacuated from the building. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
4. It's unusual to see so many famous people waiting around outside. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
5. Everyone was allowed back inside once the firefighters had left. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

44.7 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

after | yes. | did | thought | say | it | giving | I | Only | some

Only after giving it some thought did I say yes.

1. we | pitched | Hardly | rain. | to | our | had | it | when | tent | began

2. as | I | when | feel | alone. | as | Rarely | I'm | do | happy

3. was | girl | a | I | young | Not | since | danced. | I | have

4. up. | after | times | calling | five | pick | him | he | Only | did

45 Shifting focus

You can add emphasis to part of a sentence in English by splitting it into two clauses. This allows you to focus attention on the the new or important information.

New language Focusing with clauses
Aa Vocabulary Phrases for emphasis
New skill Shifting focus

45.1 REWRITE THE SENTENCES USING "WHAT" CLAUSES TO CHANGE THE FOCUS

I dislike people who put their bags on available seats in trains.
What I dislike is people who put their bags on available seats in trains.



1. I would prefer to take the train to the international airport.



2. I really want to hike the Inca Trail in Peru with my friends this year.



3. I would really appreciate some help with using the software to sort data.



4. She was most surprised by the party they threw for her birthday yesterday.



5. We really need some more time to get the booth ready for the annual fair.



6. I hate it when people play music on their phones without using headphones.



7. I really enjoyed the day we spent at the local spa last weekend.



8. He realized that he didn't want to do that boring job for the rest of his life.



9. I understood that they aren't very happy about the sudden changes we're making.

45.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

The *country* I'd most like to visit is Japan because it really fascinates me.

1. The _____ I'd most like to go back to is Ancient Rome so I could visit the Colosseum.
2. The _____ that I enjoy making the most is spaghetti carbonara. It's quick and easy.
3. The _____ I liked the most at school was science, so I became a science teacher.
4. The _____ that I'll always remember is my twenty-first, when I had a huge party.
5. The _____ that I like the most is winter. I love walking in the snow.
6. The _____ I'd most like to have met is Alasdair Rove. I love his music and his style.
7. The _____ who influenced me the most is probably Mr. Lucas, my English teacher.
8. The _____ that reminds me the most of my childhood is *Little Tim*. I loved it!
9. The _____ that always gets me up and dancing at a party is *Dancing Bells* by Claude Robert.

famous person	time	~~country~~	birthday	teacher
song	subject	season	meal	movie

45.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

~~Where~~ / **The city** I enjoyed visiting the most on the cruise was Venice.

1. **Why** / **The reason** do you always take on more than you can actually do in a day?
2. **Where** / **The place** that I would most like to be right now is a Caribbean beach.
3. **Who** / **The person** I most admire and look up to is probably Shakespeare.
4. **What** / **The thing** he absolutely hates is people who talk while they're eating.
5. **Where** / **The school** is Jonathan doing his Master's degree?
6. **The time of day** / **When** I like the most is first thing in the morning when I'm alone.

45.4 MATCH THE QUESTIONS TO THE CORRECT ANSWERS

	You two played golf together, didn't you?	No, it was 2006 when we first met.
1	You went to France last year, didn't you?	No, actually it was in New York.
2	Didn't we meet for the first time in 2005?	No, it was tennis that we played together.
3	You met Sam at the party, didn't you?	No, it was David he did that with.
4	Wasn't it in Paris that he proposed?	No, it was Slovakia where we went.
5	Weren't we 10 when we went to Peru?	No, it was physics that he majored in.
6	Wasn't it Mrs. Kins who taught us French?	No, it was Rosemary that I met.
7	Didn't John go running with Philip?	No, it was when we were 11.
8	Did you make this cake here?	No, it was Mrs. Bond who took that class.
9	He majored in history in college, didn't he?	No, it was Joanne who made that one.

45.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

That was the strawberry farmer it was that we talked to on the way home. ☐
It was the strawberry farmer that we talked to on the way home. ☑

1 It was the young man at the visitor center which helped us a lot in New York. ☐
It was the young man at the visitor center that helped us a lot in New York. ☐

2 It was an old lady helped us find the way when we were lost in that Greek village. ☐
It was an old lady that helped us find the way when we were lost in that Greek village. ☐

3 It was your colleague Charles that I met at the Christmas party last year. ☐
It was your colleague Charles where I met at the Christmas party last year. ☐

4 It was at a restaurant in Florence where we ate the delicious steak by the river. ☐
It was a restaurant in Florence where we ate the delicious steak by the river. ☐

5 I think it was our second year in college when the two of us first met. ☐
I think it was our second year in college where the two of us first met. ☐

46 Vocabulary

Aa 46.1 CRIME AND THE LAW WRITE THE PHRASES FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

Financial, nonviolent crime



white-collar crime

1 (Without) uncertainty about somebody's guilt



2 Find somebody guilty of a crime



3 A lot of crimes happening suddenly in the same area



4 Say that you know nothing about something or somebody



5 Use the power of the law to take and question somebody



6 The people who decide whether a person is guilty of a crime



7 Crime committed in a public space



8 Break the law



9 Say what punishment a criminal will have



10 A list of crimes a person has committed



11 Come to a decision about somebody's guilt or innocence



12 Request that an insurance company pays you money



13 Be covered by insurance



jury | commit a crime | criminal record | reach a verdict | arrest
~~white-collar crime~~ | convict a criminal | pass sentence | deny all knowledge
be insured | street crime | make a claim | crime wave | (beyond) reasonable doubt

47 Relative clauses

Relative clauses are sections of a sentence that provide more information about a noun in the main statement. They can be defining or non-defining.

New language Relative clauses
Aa Vocabulary Crime and criminals
New skill Specifying and elaborating

47.1 MARK WHETHER THE RELATIVE PRONOUN IS THE SUBJECT OR THE OBJECT OF THE RELATIVE CLAUSE

I'm writing about people **who** have been to prison for theft and robbery. **Subject** ☑ **Object** ☐

1. There's the woman **who** called the police. **Subject** ☐ **Object** ☐
2. The diamond necklace **which** they stole belonged to my grandmother. **Subject** ☐ **Object** ☐
3. The website **which** stole people's identities is based abroad. **Subject** ☐ **Object** ☐
4. The woman **who** I used to live next door to has been sent to prison for theft. **Subject** ☐ **Object** ☐
5. The men **who** solved the crime are fraud experts. **Subject** ☐ **Object** ☐

47.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT RELATIVE PRONOUN IN EACH SENTENCE



The cat **that** / ~~**who**~~ I found belongs to a friend of mine.

1. 
The dog **who** / **which** is standing outside the police station is a drug-detection dog.

2. 
The woman **that** / **which** was crying had been robbed by two men on a motorcycle.

3. 
The man **who** / **which** was sent to prison had stolen hundreds of credit cards.

4. 
The man **who** / **which** is talking to the police officer had his car stolen.

5. 
The job **who** / **which** I'd like to do after my graduation is in crime prevention.

47.3 FILL IN THE GAPS WITH A CORRECT RELATIVE PRONOUN

The new sports car ___*that*___ I recently bought is extremely expensive.

1. The old man _____ got lost in the city is 98 years old.
2. The lion _____ was born in captivity was released into the wild.
3. The crime _____ we reported is being broadcast on TV!
4. The woman _____ found Samantha's purse is a cleaner.
5. The cat _____ I recently adopted is black and white.
6. The woman _____ I introduced you to last Wednesday is a model.

47.4 MATCH UP THE PARTS OF THE SENTENCES

	The animal	I went to as a little girl	had escaped from the zoo.
1	The rooster	who I liked best at school	is now a hotel.
2	A movie	who won the marathon	is in the main square.
3	The woman	which he saw	was Mr. Jenkins.
4	The runner	that serves the best food	belongs to my neighbor.
5	The jacket	I dated last year	is now falling apart.
6	The restaurant	that crows loudly all day	was running his first race.
7	The school	which won a lot of awards	is now married.
8	The teacher	which I bought 5 years ago	is *Crazy Cuckoo*.

47.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, ADDING COMMAS WHERE NECESSARY

My friend Sarah who I met at school is coming to visit.
My friend Sarah, who I met at school, is coming to visit.

1. The stolen goods which were extremely valuable were found by the police.

2. My little brother who is only six is always getting into trouble at school.

3. The robbers who were all from Southampton were caught as they tried to leave the crime scene.

4. My house which I moved into two months ago has been burgled.

47.6 SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

My new car, who I'd only just bought last week, was scratched today.
My new car, which I'd only just bought last week, was scratched today.

1. The robber, which left his fingerprints behind, was easily caught by the police.

2. My wallet, who was in my bag, was stolen while we were in the market.

3. Mr. Townsend, that is a suspect in a murder inquiry, has fled the country.

4. My credit card details, who I'd used for an online purchase, were stolen.

47.7 READ THE ARTICLE AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

31 CITY BEAT

LET'S FIGHT CRIME

Exhibition highlights new products that fight crime

Anybody concerned about safety should pay a visit to the Crime Aware Exhibition, which opened yesterday at the Millennium Conference Center.

The companies that are taking part are experts in the field of crime prevention, and many of them are launching new products at the show.

One standout product in the exhibition is the Digital Peephole. This product, which has been in development for two years, attaches to your front door. Usually when you use a peephole, the person who is on the other side of the door is very difficult to see. However, the Digital Peephole links to an LCD screen. The visitor, who you may or may not know, can be clearly seen.

The Crime Aware Exhibition, which is now in its twelfth year, runs from April 2 to April 7.



The Crime Aware Exhibition is only open to police officers. **True** ☐ **False** ☑ **Not given** ☐

1. You have to pay to go into the Millennium Conference Center. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
2. There are crime prevention companies at the exhibition. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
3. You can see brand-new products at the exhibition. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
4. It took three years to make the Digital Peephole. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
5. The Digital Peephole is not expensive. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
6. The Digital Peephole allows you to identify visitors. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
7. The Digital Peephole allows you to talk to visitors via a screen. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
8. The first Crime Aware Exhibition was 20 years ago. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
9. You can visit the exhibition on April 3. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

48 More relative clauses

Relative words define or describe a noun in the main part of the sentence. Different relative words are used depending on the nouns that they relate to.

New language Where, when, whereby, whose
Aa Vocabulary Courtroom phrases
New skill Using relative words

48.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Let me tell you about the process ~~when~~ / ~~where~~ / whereby the sugar is dissolved in the water.

1 
That's the restaurant when / where / whereby we ate that excellent chicken curry.

2 
There was an agreement when / where / whereby both sides decided to support each other.

3 
This is the church when / where / whereby my parents got married 30 years ago.

4 
He's thinking about the time when / where / whereby we went to Barcelona for the weekend.

5 
We use an application procedure when / where / whereby everything is done electronically.

6 
The director talked about the area when / where / whereby the film was shot.

7 
That's the office when / where / whereby my colleagues Jessica and Peter work.

8 
We're now in the packing area when / where / whereby all of the items are packed.

9 
Heat treatment is a process when / where / whereby heat is applied to metals.

10 
This photo is from the semester when / where / whereby we lived in the dorm.

11 
We provide a system when / where / whereby companies can find talented people.

48.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL AND "WHERE," "WHEN," OR "WHEREBY"

We've set up *an exchange program whereby* our employees can work abroad for a short time.

1. The kitchen is _____ I most enjoy spending my time. I just love cooking.
2. Early morning is _____ I'm by myself and can have some peace and quiet.
3. Spring is _____ we most enjoy going out for walks in the country.
4. Photosynthesis is _____ plants convert sunlight into energy.
5. This is _____ the last annual trade fair for construction systems was held.

the time of day	the exhibition hall	the room
~~an exchange program~~	the season	the process

48.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

That was the hotel when we found those insects in the bed. It was absolutely disgusting!
That was the hotel where we found those insects in the bed. It was absolutely disgusting!

1. The TV program gave us a lot of information about the process where cheese is produced.

_____

2. That was the big museum in New York when they have those wonderful Picasso masterpieces.

_____

3. That was the time where the car broke down and we had to wait hours before someone came to help.

_____

4. I'm just waiting for the moment whereby everyone goes quiet so I can start speaking.

_____

5. We're looking at the process where fuel is burned to create the steam that drives the turbine.

_____

48.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE CORRECT SUMMARY

1. A woman went to a beauty salon where she had a manicure that she wasn't happy with. ☐
2. A woman went to a beauty salon where she had a skin cleansing treatment she wasn't happy with. ☐
3. A woman went to a beauty salon to have a skin cleansing treatment that made her ill. ☐
4. A woman went to a beauty salon where she had a manicure that made all of her fingers bright red. ☐

48.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES USING "WHOSE"

Richard is doing as much overtime as he can. His son starts college this year.
Richard, whose son starts college this year, is doing as much overtime as he can.

1. Fiona always walks in the park in the morning. She has a large and energetic dog.

2. ZFF is a company that is starting to work in China. Its CEO gave an interview on TV last night.

3. Jack is learning to play the trumpet. His school has received more money for music classes.

4. Francesca is really stressed out right now. Her computer has just crashed.

5. Mandy took some time off work last week. Her mother has suddenly become ill.

6. The company has innovative HR policies. Its employees now have unlimited time off.

7. The tennis club is expanding every year. Its tennis courts are located on the outskirts of the town.

48.6 READ THE ARTICLE AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

SHARE YOUR STORIES

Smoke, smoke everywhere

An apartment building caught fire



Yesterday, there was a fire in the apartment building where I live. Everything was normal when I got home from work that evening, but then after a while I started to notice the smell of smoke.

I didn't think any more of it, but then suddenly, the smell of smoke became much stronger and it was impossible to ignore. I opened the front door to my apartment and saw that the smoke was coming from across the hall where Mr. Jerome lives.

I called the fire department and, just as the smoke was really starting to build up, they arrived. The firefighters organized a procedure whereby some of them entered the apartment from the balcony while some others tried to break down the door and get in that way. Fortunately, nobody was hurt and there wasn't too much damage to the apartment where the fire started.

Where did the fire happen?

The fire happened in the apartment building where the writer lives.

1. Did the writer notice anything unusual when he got home from work that day?

2. Where did the writer find out that the smoke was coming from?

3. Who called the fire department and when did it arrive at the building?

4. What procedure did the firefighters organize to save the person in the apartment?

5. What were the effects on the apartment where the fire started?

6. How many people were hurt in the fire?

49 Modal verbs in the future

Some modal verbs change form when used to talk about the future. Others cannot be used in the future at all, and have to be replaced with other modal verbs or phrases.

New language "Will be able to," "will have to"
Aa Vocabulary Legal terms
New skill Expressing future ability and obligation

49.1 REWRITE THESE SENTENCES, MAKING THEM REFER TO THE FUTURE

We can't go on vacation this year because we don't have enough money.
We won't be able to go on vacation this year because we don't have enough money.

1. Unfortunately, I have to cancel our meeting because I can't make it.
2. Can you pay the fine if you park your car in this restricted zone?
3. I can't get to sleep if my neighbors are making a lot of noise.
4. Do you have to stay in and study for your final exams?
5. We have to get a good night's sleep tonight because we have an early start.
6. Do you have to take all six exams this semester?
7. We cannot meet our deadlines because the company hasn't delivered on time.
8. Can you help me translate this text from Portuguese to English?
9. I can't help you with the translation because I'm really busy at the moment.

49.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

to | he | another | look | job? | for | Will | have

Will he have to look for another job?

1. next | We | have | work | month. | to | will | hard

2. visitors | Will | after | have | day? | to | all | the | look | you

3. everything | on | do | They | to | won't | their | have | own.

4. our | have | We | will | paper. | recycle | more | of | to

49.3 FILL IN THE GAPS TO COMPLETE THE SENTENCES, REFERRING TO THE FUTURE



Mr. Denvers has a lot of appointments this afternoon, so he *won't be able to* see you.

1. 

Next year we _____ save more money, so that we'll be able to buy a house soon.

2. 

I'm sorry, but I _____ come to your concert this evening. I have to work late.

3. 

_____ join us for our annual school reunion next week? It would be great to see you.

4. 

We _____ visit the clients in person this Friday, so we will have to call them instead.

5. 

_____ travel a lot in his new job or will he be able to stay at home a little bit more?

49.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT PHRASE IN EACH SENTENCE

Now we've got the boss's approval, we **will be able to** / ~~**will have to**~~ get started with the project.

1. According to the weather forecast, it will snow tomorrow, so we **will be able to** / **will have to** go skiing.
2. He **won't be able to** / **won't have to** take the course he wanted to do because it's been canceled.
3. I hope that one day every person **will be able to** / **will have to** realize their full potential.
4. When we turn the next corner, you **will be able to** / **will have to** see the beach and the ocean.
5. She's so happy that she **won't be able to** / **won't have to** wear braces on her teeth any more.
6. If you want to come to the party, you **will be able to** / **will have to** let me know by Friday at the latest.
7. If anyone would like a signed copy of the book, you **will be able to** / **will can to** buy one later.
8. You **won't be able to** / **won't have to** do so much paperwork now that you've got a secretary.

49.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND WRITE ANSWERS TO THE QUESTIONS IN FULL SENTENCES

Mr. Hall is talking to Mrs. Cooper about her son Peter's performance at school.

Why has Peter been having problems at school recently?
Peter's been having problems at school recently because he hasn't been able to concentrate.

1. If Peter continues like this, what grades will he be able to get?

2. According to Mr. Hall, what is Peter able to do?

3. What will Peter have to do if he doesn't pass his exams?

4. Will Peter be able to get some extra support over the next few months?

49.6 READ THE ARTICLE AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

45 GOVERNMENT WATCH

PUBLIC SMOKING BANNED

Government passes law banning smoking in public

The government has passed a law which will ban smoking in all public places. The politicians told us they felt they should pass the law because we are all much more aware of the dangers of passive smoking now. They thought they could be doing more to protect the public. Smokers will only be permitted to smoke on private property from next April when we will have to start observing the law. Some have suggested that the law could be difficult to enforce, but law enforcement agencies are hopeful that businesses will cooperate with them. There's no chance of anyone being arrested for smoking in public places, but offenders will be given an on-the-spot fine if someone reports them.



The article tells us about a new law that the police have passed. **True** ☐ **False** ☑ **Not given** ☐

1. Under the new law, people will not be permitted to smoke in public. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
2. The law was passed to protect people from passive smoking. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
3. Smokers will be permitted to smoke in their own homes. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
4. The law will be enforced from April 14 next year. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
5. Everyone thinks it will be easy to enforce the law. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
6. Smokers' groups have complained about the law. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
7. The police think businesses will work with them to enforce the law. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
8. Some people could be arrested for smoking in public places. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐
9. You will have to pay money if you're caught smoking in public. **True** ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

50 Modal verbs overview

Modal verbs are used to talk about likelihood, ability, permission, and obligation, among other things. They often refer to hypothetical situations.

New language Using modal verbs
Aa Vocabulary Modal verbs
New skill Asking, offering, and predicting

50.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL



I keep telling him that he *shouldn't* work so much. He'll make himself ill.

1 
He's a great runner. He _____ run twelve miles in two hours.

2 
_____ I have another piece of cake? It's delicious.

3 
That _____ be Dominic at the door because he's in Spain at the moment.

4 
When I was younger, I _____ party all night, but now I'm older I can't.

5 
_____ we have lunch together on Thursday? It would be great to catch up.

6 
Don't worry, I _____ make sure that everything's ready on time.

7 
_____ you go down to reception and meet the visitors for me?

8 
Joanna said she _____ join us, but she probably wouldn't be able to make it.

9 
You've had that cough for two weeks now. You _____ go to the doctor.

May will should can't might
Shall Would could can ~~shouldn't~~

50.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

You ~~may~~ / **ought to** / ~~must~~ get a present for her. She would really appreciate that.

1. You **can** / **might** / **must** take your laptop out of your bag before you go through security control.
2. You **will** / **should** / **may** stay here as long as you want. Just remember to lock the door when you leave.
3. **Shall** / **Will** / **Might** I give you a ride home afterward? I'll be in the area at that time anyway.
4. **Would** / **May** / **Will** I help you carry your suitcase up the stairs?
5. When I was a child I **couldn't** / **can't** / **shouldn't** do a handstand, but now I can!
6. **Must** / **Should** / **Will** you help me prepare the training course for our Spanish colleagues?
7. If that doesn't work, you **might** / **could** / **must** call Edward and ask him if he knows what to do.
8. Since he had his operation, he **can't** / **couldn't** / **won't** walk more than 10 steps.

50.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	You could fly to Barcelona,	so you don't have so much to do?
1	Don't put your fingers so close to the pan.	They taste delicious!
2	Should I help you move those boxes,	get a decent haircut for a change.
3	Will you check that the door	but there's also a good train connection.
4	You must go to reception to register	if it's OK for us to arrive a little later?
5	May I have another cookie?	You could burn yourself.
6	I can't speak French very well,	is locked when you leave?
7	He ought to go to the hairdresser and	but I can understand a lot.
8	Would you call and ask	before you can go to the meeting room.

50.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



We had to left early yesterday so we can get the last train home. ☐
We had to leave early yesterday so we could get the last train home. ☑

1 

You should have asked your boss to pay you for the overtime you did. ☐
You should have ask your boss to pay you for the overtime you did. ☐

2 

He lost his voice, so he couldn't teach his classes last week. ☐
He lost his voice, so he can't teach his classes last week. ☐

3 

I can't find my keys anywhere. I must left them at home. ☐
I can't find my keys anywhere. I must have left them at home. ☐

4 

She should have asked me for advice. I would have been able to help. ☐
She should ask me for advice. I would have been able to help. ☐

5 

Could you visit the museum when you were on vacation, or was it closed? ☐
Can you visit the museum when you were on vacation, or was it closed? ☐

50.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

I'm sure someone must found my wallet and handed it in.
I'm sure someone must have found my wallet and handed it in.

1 You should have bring your laptop to the meeting. Sarah reminded you yesterday.

2 They ought to had more respect for the neighbors when they have a party.

3 Why didn't you ask? I would shared a taxi from the airport to the hotel with you.

4 I know what happened. We must take a wrong turn just after we left the hotel.

51 Vocabulary

Aa 51.1 CUSTOMS AND CULTURES WRITE THE PHRASES FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

Part of old customs or beliefs



traditional

1. The principles and beliefs that somebody holds



2. Something wrong that you do regularly



3. The way a person leads their life



4. A fixed, often incorrect, idea about what a person or thing is like



5. Something that is done locally as part of a tradition



6. Look or seem similar to the surrounding place or people



7. Range or variety



8. Get used to an environment, surroundings, or culture



9. Polite or accepted social behavior



10. Do something that upsets others



11. People from a nation with a shared culture and language



12. The increasing similarity between different cultures across the world



13. The way that a language is spoken in a certain area



lifestyle	diversity	acclimate	manners	
~~traditional~~	cause offence	dialect	bad habit	values
blend in	stereotype	nationality	local custom	globalization

52 Talking about groups

Sometimes you may want to talk generally about groups of people or different nationalities. It is important that you know the correct way to do this.

New language Using adjectives as nouns
Aa Vocabulary Countries and nationalities
New skill Generalizing politely

52.1 WRITE THE CORRECT NAMES FOR THE DIFFERENT GROUPS OF PEOPLE

Chinese	=	The Chinese	7 Argentinian	=	
1 Dutch	=		8 Korean	=	
2 Kenyan	=		9 Spanish	=	
3 Swiss	=		10 Greek	=	
4 Vietnamese	=		11 Japanese	=	
5 Australian	=		12 Brazilian	=	
6 Egyptian	=		13 British	=	

52.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

Canadians are famous for		fish and chips.
1 We're looking for ways of helping		should pay a much higher level of tax.
2 The young often have a reputation		to the poor.
3 The British are known for their love of		their love of winter sports.
4 Some people believe that the rich		for being wild and irresponsible.
5 Pets are seen as excellent companions		immediately after the accident.
6 We have started distributing food		for the elderly.
7 The injured were airlifted to the hospital		the homeless find accommodation.

52.3 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL



When we went to Beijing last month, we realized how hospitable *the Chinese* are.

1 
We've built these ramps and put in these rails to help _____ access the building.

2 
I think that _____ should give away more of their money to people who are in need.

3 
The emergency services have given _____ all of the medical attention they need.

4 
_____ are the group who are likely to spend the most time using social media.

5 
In Nairobi, _____ live on the edges of the city in homes they've built themselves.

6 
Ancient _____ worshipped cats.

7 
We offer accommodation for _____ who can no longer live alone.

8 
_____ are known throughout the world for making clocks and chocolate.

9 
We don't want _____ to come into contact with infectious diseases.

10 
If you'd like to help _____ who live on our streets, come along to our soup kitchen.

11 
_____ sometimes aren't offered very much help with finding a new job.

12 
He decided to become a doctor because he wanted to help _____ .

the rich the poor The young the elderly the injured the homeless the disabled
the sick The unemployed the healthy The Swiss Egyptians ~~the Chinese~~

52.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

The government has been spending a lot of money on services for the elderly in recent years. ☑
The government has been spending a lot of money on services for elderly in recent years. ☐

1. The unemployed people are welcome to come and volunteer at the library if they want to. ☐
   Unemployed people are welcome to come and volunteer at the library if they want to. ☐

2. Our charity was set up to help the elderly by organizing a weekly social meet-up for them. ☐
   Our charity was set up to help elderly by organizing a weekly social meet-up for them. ☐

3. The majority of Germans were in support of the decision. ☐
   The majority of German were in support of the decision. ☐

4. Our first priority is to help the injured. Then we can talk to journalists about what's happened. ☐
   Our first priority is to help injured. Then we can talk to journalists about what's happened. ☐

5. This fort was built by the Dutch in the late 1600s. ☐
   This fort was built by Dutch in the late 1600s. ☐

6. The government wants to introduce a new law, which will make the rich pay more in taxes. ☐
   The government wants to introduce a new law, which will make rich pay more in taxes. ☐

7. These parking spaces are only for the disabled. Can you please park somewhere else? ☐
   These parking spaces are only for disabled. Can you please park somewhere else? ☐

8. Most Brazilians are taught English at school. ☐
   Most the Brazilians are taught English at school. ☐

9. Homeless are sometimes seen as dangerous, but this is far from the truth. ☐
   The homeless are sometimes seen as dangerous, but this is far from the truth. ☐

10. The British are coming over here to learn more about our processes and how we do things. ☐
    British are coming over here to learn more about our processes and how we do things. ☐

11. I decided to become a nurse because I really wanted to be able to help the sick. ☐
    I decided to become a nurse because I really wanted to be able to help sick. ☐

12. The French are known for being very relaxed and this is also something I've noticed. ☐
    French are known for being very relaxed and this is also something I've noticed. ☐

52.5 RESPOND TO THE AUDIO, SPEAKING OUT LOUD

What is done in your country to make sure older people are looked after?

The elderly *are given a bus pass so that they can travel easily.*

1. How are people with less money treated in your country?

   The poor _____

2. Are people with illnesses comfortable going to see a doctor?

   The sick _____

3. Is there good access for people in wheelchairs in your town?

   The disabled _____

4. What kind of support is there for people who can't find work?

   The unemployed _____

5. How do you think the media portrays young people?

   The young _____

6. Is anything done to help homeless people in your country?

   The homeless _____

7. What do you and your friends think about rich people?

   The rich _____

53 Old and new situations

New situations may seem unusual, but over time they become familiar. You can use phrases that contain "be used to" and "get used to" to talk about this.

New language "Be used to" and "get used to"
Aa Vocabulary Moving and living abroad
New skill Talking about old and new situations

53.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE



I **am** / ~~**get**~~ used to running the department on my own, so it's not a problem for me.

1 

It took me a while to **get** / **be** used to the stores being closed on Sundays here.

2 
He's been starting work at 6am for three months now, so he **gets** / **is** used to it.

3 
As we live in the north of Norway, we **get** / **are** used to very cold weather in winter.

4 
I'm still **getting** / **being** used to the fast pace of activity in my new company.

5 
When he first went to live in Australia, he **wasn't** / **didn't get** used to the heat and got burned.

6 
You've been working with us for some time, so you **got** / **are** used to the way we work now.

7 
I just can't **get** / **be** used to working every weekend. I don't think I'll ever like it.

8 
Don't worry about Rachel! She **gets** / **is** used to traveling on her own.

9 
When we had our first child, we had to **get** / **be** used to not having very much sleep.

10 
We've had our new boss for six months now, but I'm still **getting** / **being** used to her style.

11 
Jeremy lives in Los Angeles, so he **gets** / **is** used to living through minor earthquakes.

53.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE CORRECT FORMS OF "BE" AND "GET"

Once Laura *gets* used to working from home, she'll realize how much better it is for her.

1. Three years after moving, I think we _____ finally used to life in the country and really like it.
2. After a while you'll _____ used to the rhythm of the train and fall asleep.
3. He _____ used to sleeping on a very soft bed at home, so he doesn't like hard beds.
4. I was just _____ used to our old English teacher when she left and we got a new one.
5. He _____ now so used to wearing glasses that he doesn't even notice them anymore.
6. I _____ used to taking the train every day and I knew the timetable by heart.

53.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

I'm get used to waiting for Simon outside his house because he's always running late.
I'm used to waiting for Simon outside his house because he's always running late.

1. Our customers from other countries get used to getting very high quality products from us.

2. I don't think Christina will ever got used to living on her own. She doesn't like it.

3. We're get used to being able to communicate with people from all over the world online.

4. My friend is not get used to eating spicy food, so it makes him go red in the face.

5. He is still being used to the new house he bought last year.

6. Our children Joseph and Liz are used to be away from the two of us while we're at work.

53.4 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	We're not used to getting such bad	in a dorm instead of at home.
1	You will have to get used to working	boring lectures. I do it every day.
2	We were used to bringing lunch	long hours if you want to be on this team.
3	Jack's slowly getting used to living	service at this restaurant. What has happened?
4	The new shoes were uncomfortable,	to work, but now we eat in the canteen.
5	I'm used to sitting through long and	but she soon got used to them.

53.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS



A man is talking about moving to a new country and getting used to life there.

How long has the speaker lived in China?

- **Two weeks** ☐
- **Two months** ☐
- **Two years** ☑

1 Where did the speaker live before this?

- **China** ☐
- **The UK** ☐
- **Japan** ☐

2 Who told the speaker that he had to move?

- **His wife** ☐
- **His boss** ☐
- **His colleague** ☐

3 Which other option did the speaker have?

- **Germany** ☐
- **Japan** ☐
- **India** ☐

4 How does he find the people in China?

- **Direct** ☐
- **Quiet** ☐
- **Rude** ☐

5 Who sometimes asks personal questions?

- **Colleagues** ☐
- **Neighbors** ☐
- **Strangers** ☐

6 Where do you not necessarily find the best food?

- **Nice restaurants** ☐
- **Fast-food outlets** ☐
- **Street markets** ☐

7 Where is the speaker now used to going to eat?

- **Nice restaurants** ☐
- **Fast-food outlets** ☐
- **Street markets** ☐

53.6 SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD, FILLING IN THE GAPS

I'm *used to* traveling a lot, so making two trips in one week is OK with me.

1. Our neighbors are so loud, but we'll just have to _____ the noise.
2. I've lived in Tokyo for ten years now, so I'm _____ Japanese food.
3. My boss was pleased about how quickly I _____ giving presentations.
4. We may have to _____ traveling a little farther to get to the shops soon.
5. We were just _____ the new office when we had to move to another one.
6. He's been working in virtual teams for a long time now, so he's _____ it.

53.7 REWRITE THE HIGHLIGHTED PHRASES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

get used to

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____

To: Kathleen

Subject: Life in London

Dear Kathleen,

It's only my first week in London and there's so much to be used to. I was got used to taking the underground metro in Paris, but now I have to getting used to a new system. I also have to got used to the food. I am used to eating such delicious food in Paris, but now I have to being used to fatty British food. Not all of the food is bad, I suppose, I just need to be used to it. I also have to getting used to speaking English all the time. I don't think I'll ever getting used to that! You be used to living abroad in all different countries. Do you have any tips for me?

Talk to you soon,

Marie

54 Articles

Articles are some of the shortest and yet most common words in the English language. There are several rules stating which article, if any, should be used.

New language Articles
Aa Vocabulary Commonly misspelled words
New skill Saying words with silent letters

54.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



MOMA is ~~a~~ / an / ~~the~~ excellent art museum that you could visit when you go to New York.

1.  A / An / The investors who come to us have a lot of money to invest in companies.
2.  We paid for a / an / the audio guide in the palace and it gave us some interesting information.
3.  A / An / The CEO of our company is surprisingly young. He's only 30 years old!
4.  If you want to travel cheaply in Paris, you should take a / an / the Métro.
5.  After dinner, I bought a / an / the ice cream cone and ate it while I was sitting by the fountain.
6.  The Eiffel Tower is probably a / an / the most famous landmark in Paris.
7.  We were so busy and did so much walking that I need a / an / the early night tonight.
8.  The flag is up, so a / an / the Queen must be in the palace today.
9.  It's amazing how quickly a / an / the company's share price is going up at the moment.
10.  We're thinking about hiring a / an / the boat tomorrow and taking it out on the water.
11.  My hotel has a / an / the beautiful view of the harbor and the sea.

54.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	People who aren't willing to help you	want to stay in an all-inclusive hotel.
1	The people who live in our town	usually aren't as good as ones you pay for.
2	The restaurant we went to last night	is the one where pizza was invented.
3	I don't know why, but spaghetti	are really irritating, in my opinion.
4	A large number of vacationers	don't want the new road to be built.
5	City tours that are free	always tastes better when you're in Italy.

54.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Last year I went on vacation to Kuala Lumpur in Malaysia and had the great time.
Last year I went on vacation to Kuala Lumpur in Malaysia and had a great time.

1. A Petronas Towers are the tallest buildings in Kuala Lumpur and they dominate the skyline.

2. If you go up to the top of the tower, you get a excellent view of the Kuala Lumpur.

3. Street food stands on the side of an road are great places to try Malaysian food.

4. You can also visit Islamic Arts Museum if you go to Kuala Lumpur. It's interesting.

5. Taking the day trip to the nearby Batu Caves is a good idea if you have time.

6. Have you walked through a colorful China Town market in Kuala Lumpur?

54.4 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE CORRECT ARTICLES, LEAVING A BLANK FOR ZERO ARTICLE



They had ___an___ amazing dinner in the restaurant at the top of the tower.

1 

This is _____ old typewriter that my mother always used to use.

2 

People from Brazil are known for their love of _____ football.

3 

I've never seen such _____ wide selection of foods for breakfast as they had there.

4 

They love _____ Chinese food, so I'm sure they'll enjoy their trip to China.

5 

Our tour guide is _____ older lady who's lived in Dublin all her life.

6 

There's _____ university in Bologna which is nearly 1,000 years old.

7 

Here's our guide to _____ travel destinations that will be the most popular next year.

8 

_____ waitress who served us at that restaurant was very friendly and helpful.

9 

Children usually enjoy visiting _____ zoo in Edinburgh. You can even see pandas there.

10 

Churros are very popular in _____ Spain. People eat them with chocolate sauce.

11 

I wasn't sure whether we should leave _____ tip for the waiter or not.

12 

_____ music festival we went to was brilliant. There were a lot of good bands playing.

13 

_____ hotel where we stayed is a five-star hotel, so it was very luxurious.

54.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS



George and Carla are talking about the different countries where they have lived.

Germans and Brazilians both love soccer. George thinks Germany has some top class teams.
True ☑ **False** ☐

1. George supports the Bayern Munich team and thinks it's the best team around at the moment.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
2. George says German food is filling and tasty, but it is quite salty for him.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
3. Carla says steak is the most popular food in Brazil. Brazilians love meat, especially barbecued beef.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
4. Carla thinks the famous statue of Christ the Redeemer is the most popular landmark in Brazil.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
5. Carla thinks the Brandenburg Gate is the symbol of Brazil.
   True ☐ **False** ☐

54.6 MARK THE SILENT LETTERS AND SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD

I know you want to go out later.

1. Let's call a plumber to fix the water heater.
2. Foreign visitors think we speak good English.
3. I hurt my knee while we were trekking.
4. I like to listen to music while I'm traveling.
5. To be honest, I don't think I like him.
6. It's so cold. My fingers are numb.
7. He has just trapped his thumb in the door!

55 Abstract ideas

Most abstract nouns are uncountable. Some, however, can be either countable or uncountable, and the two forms often mean slightly different things.

New language Concrete and abstract nouns
Aa Vocabulary Education systems
New skill Talking about abstract ideas

55.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE



Please accept our ~~apology~~ / **apologies** for the cold soup you were served in our restaurant.

1 

We often find that men aren't as good at taking care of their **health** / **healths** as women are.

2 

She made her **anger** / **angers** at the graffiti on the wall clear to everyone in the room.

3 

Unfortunately, the funding for all of the **library** / **libraries** in our area has been cut this year.

4 

He's been having some **trouble** / **troubles** getting his computer to start all week.

5 

Could you please email me all of the **information** / **informations** I need for my trip to Peru?

6 

Our company specializes in creating **beauty** / **beauties** products for young women.

7 

He has a lot of **knowledge** / **knowledges** about the history of the Middle Ages.

8 

I've made a list of all the **deadline** / **deadlines** for the project in this document.

9 

We take a lot of **pride** / **prides** in our work and always do our very best.

10 

It's absolutely freezing today. It must be about minus fifteen **degree** / **degrees** outside!

11 

We're facing some fierce **competition** / **competitions** from companies in South America.

55.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

There's so much more *space* in our new flat than in our old flat in Birmingham.

1. My _____ are with the families of the victims of the disaster at this terrible time.
2. I come from Nigeria and my _____ is very important to me. I keep the traditions alive.
3. Our _____ is that our daughter will go to college and get a good job.
4. Your _____ is really important to me, and I hope you feel the same.
5. My happiest childhood _____ are of spending the summer in Sweden with my family.
6. I save some money every month and then at the end of the year I give it to local _____ .

charities | memories | ~~space~~ | culture | friendship | hope | thoughts

55.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	Everyone needs some relaxation	after a long week at work.
1	You can now all find out what	grades you got on the exam.
2	My car has a top speed	of 100 miles per hour.
3	The kittens your cat gave	birth to are real beauties.
4	I'm going to write the neighbors	a letter of apology for all of the noise.
5	My cousin Matthew repairs	computers for a living.
6	We're here today because we're	interested in learning more about other cultures.
7	Nowadays it's more and more	important to have good communication skills.
8	I make a living from entering	competitions. You can win so much!
9	You have to study for six	semesters before you get your degree.

55.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

He's had so much successes as the CEO of this company, but now he wants to move on.
He's had so much success as the CEO of this company, but now he wants to move on.

1. The temperatures this summer are some of the highest in living memories.

2. I work hard on my friendship because friends are an important part of my life.

3. She hopes that she will complete her study and graduate next summer.

4. We're collecting money for charities, but we haven't decided which one we'll give it to yet.

5. There are a lot of free parking space at the front of the building if you're still looking.

6. You will be in our thought while you're away and we'll call you as often as we can.

7. There's always a lot of competitions in the soft drink market. It's hard to break through.

8. He takes so much prides in his garden and he wants other people to enjoy it, too.

9. There are so many time when I wish I had a robot who could do the housework for me.

10. She decided to take all of her knowledges about marketing and put it into a book.

11. The skills he has for soccer is unbelievable for someone of his age.

12. The company is known for the very high qualities of their kitchen products.

56 Vocabulary

Aa 56.1 TECHNOLOGY AND THE FUTURE WRITE THE PHRASES FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

The most modern and up-to-date

state-of-the-art



1. Say what you think might happen in the future



2. What will happen in the future



3. Something that will happen but it is not possible to say when



4. Change or affect something



5. Design something to work in the future, even if technology changes



6. A huge change in ideas or methods



7. The most recent version of a product



8. An important discovery or achievement



9. Plan ahead so that something can happen



10. Have good or positive plans



11. An era based on digital information, when technology is dominant



12. Hope for a successful or positive outcome



13. Extremely modern and innovative



have good intentions | digital age | revolution | hope for the best | what the future holds
only a matter of time | breakthrough | make arrangements | the latest model | ~~state-of-the-art~~
cutting-edge | make predictions | future-proof | have an influence on something

57 Future hopes

To talk about wishes for the future, usually when you want something to change, you use the past tense modals "would" and "could."

New language "Wish" with "would" or "could"
Aa Vocabulary Hopes for the future
New skill Talking about future hopes and wishes

57.1 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

I wish I can go to the movies with you this weekend.
I wish I could go to the movies with you this weekend.

1. My job at the supermarket is so boring, I wish I would find another one.

2. I wish Rosemary is stopping talking about herself all the time. It's so annoying!

3. I wish my teacher will give me more help. I don't understand any of this.

4. They wish they would take some time off work so they could go on vacation.

5. He wishes he can win the first prize in the competition he's entered.

6. She would she could get a leading role in the play, but she never goes to auditions.

7. I wish I would afford to get a new kitchen. This one is so old it's falling apart.

8. Adam wishes his teacher will give him more homework. He doesn't have enough to do.

9. I wish they will make it easier to work out how much tax you have to pay.

57.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING "COULD" OR "WOULD"

The company wishes its employees *would* take advantage of the training it offers.

1. I wish my boss _____ be a little more polite. He's always rude to everyone.
2. Linda wishes she _____ drive to work, but she still hasn't passed her driving test.
3. They wish their neighbors _____ be a bit quieter. They're always making noise.
4. I wish they _____ tell us what's going to happen now instead of making us wait.
5. Jacob wishes he _____ relax, but he can't because he's having a stressful time at work.
6. I wish we _____ go on a helicopter ride around Manhattan, but we can't afford it.
7. Susanne wishes her daughter _____ call her more often. She only calls once a month.
8. I wish the people on the train _____ move their bags off the seats next to them.
9. They wish they _____ get a good espresso in this town, but they can't find one anywhere.

57.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	The printer keeps jamming. I wish	they would make them simpler.
1	My job is really boring. I wish	someone would turn it off.
2	The snails are eating my plants. I wish	I could drive instead.
3	The rules are so complicated. I wish	I could find one that works.
4	I can't type very quickly. I wish	I could go to bed.
5	They always leave a mess. I wish	I could get rid of them once and for all.
6	The bus always takes so long. I wish	my boss would let me take a course.
7	I'm so sleepy. I wish	they would think about other people.
8	That machine is very noisy. I wish	I could find something more interesting.

57.4 SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD, FILLING IN THE GAPS WITH "COULD" OR "WOULD"

I wish the airline _____would_____ make it easier to change flights.

1. The students wish they _____ speak perfect English.
2. He wishes his teacher _____ give him more help.
3. She wishes she _____ go to the party.
4. We wish they _____ let us leave work early.

57.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS



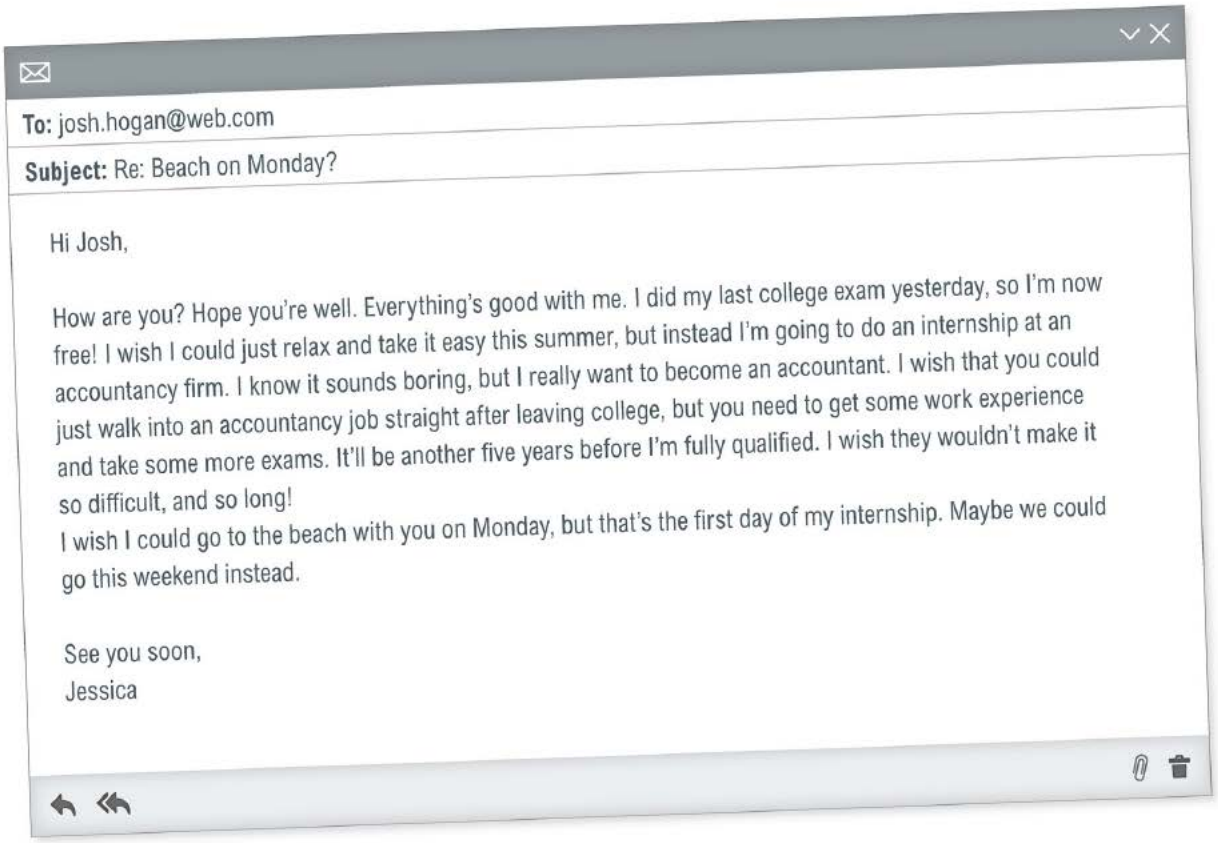
Cheryl is talking to her boss Michael about her job.

Which department does Cheryl work in?

- **Human Resources** ☐
- **Sales** ☑
- **Service** ☐

1. What change does Cheryl want to make to her working life?
   - **She wants to work from home** ☐
   - **She wants to travel more** ☐
   - **She wants to travel less** ☐
2. Where are the customers of Cheryl's company located?
   - **In Cheryl's home town** ☐
   - **Close to headquarters** ☐
   - **Far away from headquarters** ☐
3. According to Cheryl's boss, what does the CEO not want to do?
   - **Move the headquarters to a better place** ☐
   - **Lose the customers the company has** ☐
   - **Keep the head office where it is now** ☐
4. What would be Cheryl's ideal job if she could pick one?
   - **CEO of the company** ☐
   - **Internal sales team leader** ☐
   - **Her boss' job** ☐
5. Why will there be a vacancy within the next two years?
   - **Geoff wants to leave the company** ☐
   - **Geoff is going to retire** ☐
   - **Geoff is going to take a new position** ☐

57.6 READ THE EMAIL AND WRITE ANSWERS TO THE QUESTIONS AS FULL SENTENCES



To: josh.hogan@web.com

Subject: Re: Beach on Monday?

Hi Josh,

How are you? Hope you're well. Everything's good with me. I did my last college exam yesterday, so I'm now free! I wish I could just relax and take it easy this summer, but instead I'm going to do an internship at an accountancy firm. I know it sounds boring, but I really want to become an accountant. I wish that you could just walk into an accountancy job straight after leaving college, but you need to get some work experience and take some more exams. It'll be another five years before I'm fully qualified. I wish they wouldn't make it so difficult, and so long!

I wish I could go to the beach with you on Monday, but that's the first day of my internship. Maybe we could go this weekend instead.

See you soon,
Jessica

When did Jessica do her last exam?

She did her last exam yesterday.

1. What does Jessica wish she could do this summer?

2. What does Jessica wish you could do straight after leaving college?

3. How much longer will it be before Jessica is a qualified accountant?

4. What does Jessica wish she could do on Monday?

58 The future continuous

You can use the future continuous with "will" to make predictions about the future, and also to speculate about what might be happening at the current moment.

New language The future continuous with "will"
Vocabulary Polite requests
New skill Planning your career

58.1 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS WITH "WILL"



This book is so long, I think I *'ll be reading* **(read)** it for the whole of next year!

1 
Sheila is sick, so she _____ **(work)** from home for the rest of the week.

2 
This time next week, I _____ **(sit)** on a beach in the Caribbean.

3 
The boss thinks that in 10 years' time I _____ **(run)** this company myself.

4 
They _____ **(travel)** for the next two hours and won't be able to take any calls.

5 
It looks like we _____ **(spend)** a lot of time together over the next few months.

6 
The pilots are on strike, so I think I _____ **(wait)** at the airport for a while.

7 
Will you _____ **(bring)** your husband and children with you tomorrow?

8 
He _____ **(stand)** near the entrance waiting for us when we get there.

9 
I _____ **(drive)** past the stores later if you want me to get some groceries.

10 
We _____ **(not launch)** our new perfume until the trade fair next year.

11 
James has applied for some jobs, so I think he _____ **(leave)** the company soon.

58.2 USE THE CHART TO CREATE 12 CORRECT SENTENCES AND SAY THEM OUT LOUD

By this time next week, I'll be working in a big city.

By this time In	tomorrow next week five years' time	I'll be working I'll be living I'll be relaxing	on vacation. in a big city. as a manager.

58.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

We will be fly at 35,000 feet until we start our descent into Vancouver.
We will be flying at 35,000 feet until we start our descent into Vancouver.

1. The next time I go to the mountains, I'll be ski like an expert.

2. In a few years' time, I be playing basketball professionally.

3. We will being hosting some visitors from China next week.

4. This evening they be serving snacks and drinks for everyone.

5. In five years' time, I won't be teach at a primary school any more.

6. Will you asking for input from the audience during your presentation?

58.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

vacation. | I'll | Spain | traveling | to | be | on | my

I'll be traveling to Spain on my vacation.

1. be | in | 10 | time. | software | We'll | this | using | years'

2. will | 6pm | today. | until | be | Lisa | working

3. five | bus | will | leaving | minutes. | The | in | be

4. stopping | Station. | Central | at | This | be | train | will

5. be | I | will | Next | working | from | home. | week,

58.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS



Charles is calling Rachel to find out where Bill is.

Charles wants to find Bill.
True ☑ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

1. Bill usually eats his lunch at 12:30pm.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

2. Charles is giving a presentation in two weeks.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

3. Charles and Bill work in market research.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

4. Bill likes to go for a walk around the building.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

5. Charles will leave the office at 4pm today.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

58.6 READ THE ARTICLE AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

DAILY REPORTER

Where are we heading?

The march toward global connectivity

The number of internet users is increasing rapidly and it's predicted that in a few years' time, five billion of us will be shopping online. Around half of these people will be using tablets to access the internet. By 2020, connected devices will be so integrated into our lives that we will see them as "digital assistants."

At this very moment someone, somewhere will be buying something online and it is expected that every retail company will be selling their products on the web in 10 years' time.

Whole cities will become increasingly connected, with free public wi-fi in more and more areas. The internet user of the future will be browsing on the go, wherever they are.



According to the article what is going up very quickly at the moment?

The number of internet users is going up very quickly at the moment.

1. According to the article, how many people will be shopping online in a few years' time?

2. How many of these people will be using tablets to access the internet?

3. What will become so integrated into our lives that we'll see them as "digital assistants?"

4. According to the article, what can we assume that someone, somewhere will be doing right now?

5. Which retail companies will be selling their products on the web in 10 years' time?

6. Where will future internet users be able to get online?

59 The future perfect

You can use the future perfect to talk about events that will overlap with, or finish before, another event in the future.

New language The future perfect
Aa Vocabulary Life plans
New skill Making plans and predictions

59.1 FILL IN THE GAPS BY PUTTING THE VERBS IN THE FUTURE PERFECT



By next March, I *will have bought* (buy) my own house.

1 
I _____ (finish) my degree by the time I am 22.

2 
You _____ (be) married for one year in a week's time.

3 
We _____ (complete) all our essays by the end of June.

4 
By the time I am 24, I _____ (find) a good job.

5 
I think my son _____ (propose) to his girlfriend by the end of the year.

6 
By the time we are 30, we _____ (have) our first child.

7 
Liza _____ (move) to London by the end of the month.

8 
I _____ (graduate) from college by this time next year.

9 
By the time I am 25, I _____ (leave) my parents' house.

10 
I _____ (make) one million dollars by the time I'm 40.

11 
They _____ (start) their new business by the end of the month.

59.2 REWRITE THE HIGHLIGHTED PHRASES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

will have taken

1 _____

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

6 _____

7 _____

8 _____

9 _____



Hot Cakes

HOME | ENTRIES | ABOUT | CONTACT

POSTED AT 8:55PM

MY BUSINESS PLAN

By the end of this month, I will have take out a bank loan. I also will has found the perfect location for my new cupcake shop, and I will have perfect the recipes for my cupcakes. By the end of next month, I will have open my new shop and I hope I will has been featured in all the local newspapers. By the end of the first week, I hope that I will have sell at least 1,500 cupcakes. By the end of the first month, I hope that I will increased this number to 8,000 cupcakes. I expect that I will have make a profit of $12,000 by the end of the first six months. By the end of the first year, I have taken on two members of staff and I will have launch my online business. It's an ambitious plan, but I know I can do it!

59.3 SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD, FILLING IN THE GAPS

Ken _will have read_ **(read)** all his textbooks before lessons start next week.

1 They _____ **(choose)** the best candidate by the end of the day.

2 Jenny _____ **(buy)** a new dress before the wedding.

3 By the end of the year, I _____ **(complete)** three marathons.

4 I _____ **(open)** all my presents by the end of the party.

5 By the time he starts his new job, Hans _____ **(have)** his hair cut.

6 We _____ **(visit)** 15 countries by the end of this year.

59.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES USING THE FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS

In a year's time, I **(study)** English for 10 years.
In a year's time, I will have been studying English for 10 years.

1. By the time we arrive in Spain, we **(drive)** for eight hours.

2. Jenna **(run)** her own business for five years in May.

3. In June, I **(work)** as a teacher for 10 years.

4. By the time the cake is decorated, we **(cook)** for six hours.

5. I **(do)** yoga for 10 years by the end of the year.

6. In November, Becky and I **(live)** together for three years.

7. By midday, Jonas **(wait)** to see the doctor for three hours.

8. By the time I have finished, I **(clean)** the house for five hours.

9. By the time the plane lands in Malaysia, we **(travel)** for 13 hours.

10. By December, I **(learn)** to paint for six months.

11. I **(study)** medicine for four years by the end of June.

12. By the end of next month, the police **(look)** for the criminals for a year.

59.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Next week, I will have finished my course at the university. ☑
Next week, I will have been finishing my course at the university. ☐

1. At the end of the week, Lise will have studied in France for three months. ☐
   At the end of the week, Lise will have been studying in France for three months. ☐
2. This time tomorrow, I will have been having my operation. ☐
   This time tomorrow, I will have had my operation. ☐
3. I will have finished this report by the time you get here. ☐
   I will have been finishing this report by the time you get here. ☐
4. Next week, I will have been studying for two years. ☐
   Next week, I will have studied for two years. ☐
5. By the end of January, I will have been finishing my Italian course. ☐
   By the end of January, I will have finished my Italian course. ☐
6. In two hours, I will have written my last report for this client. ☐
   In two hours, I will have been writing my last report for this client. ☐

59.6 REWRITE THE HIGHLIGHTED PHRASES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

owned

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

To: Bill

Subject: Our anniversary

My dearest Bill,
On January 8, we will have been owning this house for 10 years. We will have being married for 11 years, and we will have been having children for six years. What a fantastic 10 years. Thank you! I hope the next 10 years will be just as happy. By then, we will have been knowing each other for 25 years, and being together almost as long! I can't believe how fast the time flies.
All my love,
Anabel

60 The future in the past

English uses a number of constructions to describe thoughts about the future that we had at some point in the past.

New language "Would" and "was going to"
Aa Vocabulary Changing plans
New skill Saying what you thought

60.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

I ~~will~~ / **would** love to see a basketball game in the US. I'm a big basketball fan.

1. I always thought that I **will** / **would** go to college, but I then decided to get a job instead.
2. As soon as I get home, I **will** / **would** give you a call to let you know I've arrived safely.
3. I'm sure that we **will** / **would** still be friends when we're older. There's no doubt about that.
4. He said that he **will** / **would** try to get me some tickets for the soccer game if he could.

60.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

It's strange that he failed the exam. I thought he's going to get the highest grade. ☐
It's strange that he failed the exam. I thought he was going to get the highest grade. ☑

1. I got up so late, I knew I wasn't going to get to the airport in time. ☐
   I got up so late, I knew I wouldn't going to get to the airport in time. ☐
2. Sarah's an excellent swimmer, so I knew it's going to be hard to beat her. ☐
   Sarah's an excellent swimmer, so I knew it was going to be hard to beat her. ☐
3. My mother promised she won't going to embarrass me by hugging me in public. ☐
   My mother promised she wasn't going to embarrass me by hugging me in public. ☐
4. I found the exam easy, so I believed I was going to get a good grade. ☐
   I found the exam easy, so I believed I will going to get a good grade. ☐
5. He knew he wasn't getting the job, but he wanted to apply for it anyway. ☐
   He knew he wasn't going to get the job, but he wanted to apply for it anyway. ☐

60.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

I got up at 9 o'clock, so I know I was going to miss my flight at 10 o'clock.
I got up at 9 o'clock, so I knew I was going to miss my flight at 10 o'clock.

1. They couldn't come last week because they are going to a soccer game that evening.

2. She had taken her English exam the next day, so she felt a little nervous.

3. They would meeting with their lawyers that afternoon to decide what to do.

4. Sandra is planning to fly to Tenerife with her daughter yesterday, but the pilots are on strike.

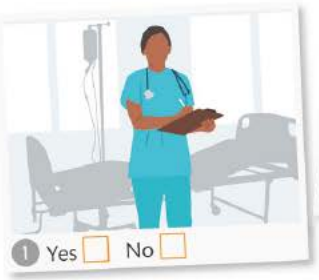
5. Gareth is making a big announcement that afternoon, but then he lost his voice.

6. Camy and Charlie were have a big party to celebrate their anniversary that weekend.

7. Harren is getting married to Jennifer at 2 o'clock that afternoon in New York.

60.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK WHETHER THE EVENTS REALLY HAPPENED OR NOT









60.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES USING FUTURE IN THE PAST TENSES

She is nervous as she is taking her English speaking exam this morning.
She was nervous as she was taking her English speaking exam that morning.



1. I know that I will be the marketing head of a leading company one day.



2. When I see him I know that I'm going to marry him and move to another country.



3. I'm taking my last exam in chemistry at college this afternoon.



4. I think I will travel around the world working as a part-time photographer.



5. She believes she will get a recording contract as soon as she finishes her course at college.



6. I know I will be late when I see how much traffic there is on the road.



7. I'm meeting some Chinese customers this morning for a presentation on distribution.

8. I think Shania and Jo will go somewhere warm for their holiday this year.



9. He is building an extension on the back of their house in Germany.



10. I decide I will retire early and spend more time with my family and close friends.



11. I know I'm going to be able to climb to the top of the mountain sooner than the others.



12. The company is interviewing some more people for the marketing job this week.

61 Vocabulary

Aa 61.1 ART AND CULTURE WRITE THE PHRASES FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

Be extremely absorbed in something



be engrossed in something

1. Complicated / simple artistic or cultural ideas



2. Long, written stories that are fictional



3. Say what you feel, even if it is controversial



4. Say that something is very good and tell others about it



5. The fictional people in a book, film, or play



6. The series of events that makes up the story in a book, film, or play



7. Say that something is extremely good / bad



8. Very positive reviews



9. A feeling or effect that lasts a long time



10. Alter or change a decision or feeling about something



11. Finally make a decision



12. The first / last moments of a book, film, or play



13. To set a particular mood or tone



glowing reviews · heap praise / criticism on something · ~~be engrossed in something~~ · plot · highly recommend · lasting impression · characters · make up your mind · speak your mind · opening / closing scenes · create an atmosphere · highbrow / lowbrow · change your mind · novels

62 Leaving words out

When you want to communicate clearly, it can be helpful to avoid repetition. One way to do this is to drop any unnecessary words.

New language Ellipsis
Aa Vocabulary Entertainment
New skill Leaving out unnecessary words

62.1 CROSS OUT THE WORDS THAT CAN BE LEFT OUT OF EACH SENTENCE



They could have gone to Spain on vacation, but they didn't want to ~~go to Spain on vacation~~.

1 
The ceremony honored firemen and the ceremony honored paramedics.

2 
We could go to the session on marketing or we could go to this talk on public relations.

3 
It would be nice to go to the theater or to go to a film. You can decide.

4 
This process was described by Gutmann and it was also described by Quirke.

5 
She could have directed the TV series or she could have directed the film version.

6 
They should use paper bags and they should recycle more of their garbage.

7 
He might have become a great writer, but he didn't want to become a great writer.

8 
The problem is that he wants to leave work early, but she doesn't want to leave work early.

9 
He was chosen to play the lead role and he did an excellent job.

10 
I could wear this yellow dress for the wedding or I could wear this blue skirt.

11 
You could eat at the new Italian restaurant or you could eat at the Mexican restaurant.

62.2 READ THE ARTICLE AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

SILVER SCREEN

What to watch

Your one-stop guide to films this week



First Kiss Fans of romantic comedies will go to see *First Kiss* and fall in love with it. You could go to see it with your friends or that special someone in your life.

★★★★☆

Dead of Night The plot of this horror film is slightly ridiculous and could have been written by any 10 year old. The director has directed many well-known horror films, but we won't count this one among his best work.

★★☆☆☆

Starship Ipsilon This is a fun remake of an old science-fiction film and makes fun of the genre of sci-fi. Die-hard sci-fi fans may not like the new actors and storylines, but will go and see it anyway, I imagine.

★★☆☆☆

Bobby IV Bobby Johnson is definitely back and shows us why he's the greatest wrestler of all time in this new sequel in the Bobby series. Bobby never gives up and does everything in his power to regain the world championship.

★★★☆☆

What type of film is *First Kiss*?

- **Action** ☐
- **Horror** ☐
- **Romantic comedy** ☑

1. Who should you not go to see *First Kiss* with?
   - **Your friends** ☐
   - **Your partner** ☐
   - **Your parents** ☐
2. What is wrong with *Dead of Night*?
   - **Its plot** ☐
   - **Its special effects** ☐
   - **Its music** ☐
3. How would you describe *Starship Ipsilon*?
   - **Blockbuster** ☐
   - **Spoof** ☐
   - **Prequel** ☐
4. Who will go to see *Starship Ipsilon*?
   - **Dedicated sci-fi fans** ☐
   - **Those who are new to sci-fi** ☐
   - **Actors from the original film** ☐
5. What kind of film is *Bobby IV*?
   - **Remake** ☐
   - **Sequel** ☐
   - **Documentary** ☐

62.3 FILL IN THE GAPS WITH THE REPEATED WORDS THAT HAVE BEEN DROPPED

It's a shame. I liked the film, but my brother didn't [*like the film*].

1. I'm so sorry! I broke your television, but I didn't mean to [_____].
2. We can't go to the movies tonight but we can [_____] tomorrow.
3. He told me he could speak French, but I don't think he can [_____].
4. My daughter loves horror films and [_____] thrillers.
5. We went to Venice and [_____] rode in a gondola this summer.
6. She could sit in the kitchen or [_____] the garden.
7. Do we need a new computer? We could get a laptop or [_____] a tablet instead.
8. It's such a beautiful day. We should go to the park or [_____] the beach.
9. The critics loved the latest blockbuster and [_____] said it was worth watching.
10. I need to borrow your car. I will email shortly to explain why [_____].

62.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS



Rachel and Simon are talking in the movie theater, waiting for the film to start.

Simon and Rachel are going to see *Death Kiss*.
True ☑ **False** ☐

1. The film starts at 7:30pm.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
2. Simon has booked the tickets.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
3. Rachel wants a hotdog.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
4. Simon wants buttered popcorn.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
5. The last film Simon saw was very boring.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
6. Rachel went to the film with Gavin.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
7. Gavin is 15 years old.
   True ☐ **False** ☐

62.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE

The people I met when I was on vacation were **surprisingly** / ~~**highly**~~ good at speaking English.

1. I worked really hard on my entry, so I was **ridiculously** / **bitterly** disappointed that I didn't win.
2. The line for tickets at the museum was **painfully** / **heavily** slow. I thought we would never get in.
3. I won't go to that restaurant again. The prices were **heavily** / **astronomically** high!
4. The trip was **painfully** / **ridiculously** long because we were stuck in traffic for two hours.
5. I was **deeply** / **bitterly** moved by the poem she read at her mother's funeral.
6. Everyone knows that farmers in this country are **heavily** / **deeply** subsidized.
7. I think you should avoid mentioning any **astronomically** / **highly** controversial topics in your talk.

62.6 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	She always works long hours	she knew who might be able to help.
1	We went for a walk in the woods	a beach or city break?
2	She emailed and called everyone	or go out for dinner tonight?
3	The cathedral is beautiful	and doesn't take very much time off.
4	Do you think we should go on	but not his face. It's been a long time.
5	He went cycling along the Rhine	and took some wonderful photos of the trees.
6	I want to move,	and ask him to confirm the details.
7	Could you call or email him	and is the seat of the Bishop of Rouen.
8	I can remember his name,	stayed at a wonderful resort on the coast.
9	They went to Mauritius and	and visited a lot of vineyards.
10	Do you want to cook	but he doesn't.

63 Substituting words

As well as ellipsis (leaving words out), you can also avoid repeating yourself by replacing some phrases with shorter ones. This is called substitution.

New language Substitution
Aa Vocabulary Books and reading
New skill Replacing phrases

63.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE



We saw a lot of dogs at the rescue center, but the **one** / ~~**ones**~~ we adopted was the cutest.

1 

I've eaten a lot of pizza in my time, but the **one** / **ones** I ate in Rome last year was the best.

2 

I love these high-heeled shoes, but I think it's time I got some new **one** / **ones**.

3 

Kirsten did well on both parts of the exam, but she did especially well on the first **one** / **ones**.

4 

I really like the movies he's in, especially the earlier **one** / **ones** from the start of his career.

5 

Our daughter likes a lot of subjects at school, but the **one** / **ones** she enjoys the most is science.

6 

Mike has written a few books, but I think the first thriller he wrote is the best **one** / **ones**.

7 

Ann tried on 10 different wedding dresses before she found the **one** / **ones** she wanted.

8 

There are many activities for older children and some for younger **one** / **ones**.

9 

I love all of the cakes Sam makes, but the **one** / **ones** she made today was really delicious.

10 

I've been to a lot of countries, but the **one** / **ones** I enjoyed visiting the most was Japan.

11 

Sarah isn't happy with her office assistant, so she wants to get a new **one** / **ones**.

63.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING "ONE," "ONES," OR "SOME"

We still have _____some_____ issues to resolve before the project is completed.

1. If you need any pens to write with, I have _____ here.
2. If you'd like a copy of my notes, I will print _____ for you.
3. They need some more batteries because the _____ I gave them last time have run out.
4. If you find anywhere selling cups of coffee, could you get me _____ ?
5. There's water here in case you need to use _____ while you're painting.
6. My new computer is slower than the _____ I got rid of when I bought it.
7. This cheeseburger tastes as good as the _____ I ate in the other restaurant.

63.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Our car is so old and unreliable these days. We need to get a new ones.
Our car is so old and unreliable these days. We need to get a new one.

1. If you need any more paper to write on, there's one on my desk.

_____

2. If you're looking for some new running shoes, I'd recommend the some on the left.

_____

3. I have three tickets and I only need two, so I could give you some if you like.

_____

4. If you need any information about the building, ask me and I'll give you ones.

_____

5. If they like Italian restaurants, there's a great some just down the road.

_____

6. I think Jenny and Matthew's wedding was the best ones I've ever been to.

_____

63.4 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	If you need a pencil,	but it wasn't the one I wanted.
1	I know you want a new computer,	are the ones who write about vampires.
2	My sister bought me an album,	if you would like some.
3	If you're looking for bookstores,	I have one over here.
4	I think my favorite authors	but I didn't have time to bake one.
5	We should buy new flowers	and get rid of these old ones.
6	Please help yourself to tea or coffee	there are some on Upper Street.
7	I wanted to bring a cake,	but we can't afford one.

63.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

I like spicy food, but my wife doesn't like. ☐
I like spicy food, but my wife doesn't. ☑

1 I didn't enjoy it, but my friend enjoyed. ☐
I didn't enjoy it, but my friend did. ☐

2 Did you see the new movie? We did see. ☐
Did you see the new movie? We did, too. ☐

3 You bought a blue hat! I did, too. ☐
You bought a blue hat! I do, too. ☐

4 Do I still cycle to work? Yes, I do. ☐
Do I still cycle to work? Yes, I did. ☐

5 He works downtown, but she doesn't. ☐
He works downtown, but she isn't. ☐

6 My mom went, but my dad didn't. ☐
My mom went, but my dad didn't went. ☐

7 Did you bring your camera? I didn't. ☐
Did you bring your camera? I didn't bring. ☐

8 You baked cookies! I did, too. ☐
You baked cookies! I do, too. ☐

9 Does she like reading? Yes, she does. ☐
Does she like reading? Yes, she do. ☐

10 They went skiing last year, but we didn't. ☐
They went skiing last year, but we don't. ☐

11 My friend found it difficult. I did, too. ☐
My friend found it difficult. I found, too. ☐

63.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS



Michael is talking to Kristen about an expensive smartwatch he got as a gift.

Michael has a new smartwatch.	True ☑	False ☐
1 Kristen has the same smartwatch as Michael.	True ☐	False ☐
2 You can only use the smartwatch as a smartphone.	True ☐	False ☐
3 Hi-tech watches are on sale at a shop in the mall.	True ☐	False ☐
4 Michael's mother gave him the smartwatch.	True ☐	False ☐
5 Michael and his mother couldn't afford to replace the smartwatch.	True ☐	False ☐
6 Kristen wants Michael to bring her a voucher for the online shop.	True ☐	False ☐

63.7 RESPOND OUT LOUD TO THE AUDIO, USING SUBSTITUTION

Would you like to go to the mall?

[suppose] *Yes, I suppose so.*

1 Is it going to be sunny later?

[hope] _____

2 Did you remember to lock the door?

[think] _____

3 Didn't Tarkovsky direct your favorite movie?

[did] _____

4 Will the drinks be free tonight?

[imagine] _____

5 Will Sarah be at the party tonight?

[assume] _____

64 Shortening infinitives

As well as ellipsis and substitution, you can also shorten (or "reduce") infinitives to prevent repetition. This will help you to sound more natural when speaking.

New language Reduced infinitives
Aa Vocabulary Music and performance
New skill Avoiding repetition

64.1 CROSS OUT ALL THE WORDS THAT YOU CAN LEAVE OUT



I want to get the best tickets for the show but I can't afford to ~~get them.~~

1.  I wanted to wake up early today, but I wasn't able to wake up early today.
2.  Stefan was enjoying the ballet. At least, he seemed to be enjoying it.
3.  I'm so nervous! I'm singing on stage tonight, but I really don't want to sing on stage tonight.
4.  Your dog likes chasing people a lot more than he used to like chasing people.
5.  I'm so thirsty! I meant to buy a drink before the movie, but I forgot to buy one.
6.  Don't be nervous. There's no need to be nervous.
7.  Darren said he'd help us unpack, but it seems that he won't be able to help us.
8.  I really wanted to go to that concert, but I couldn't afford to go to it.
9.  If you want to be promoted, you have to show me that you deserve to be promoted.
10.  Helena asked me to join the college choir, but I didn't want to join the choir.
11.  I'm sorry I'm so late! I didn't mean to be so late.

64.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Richard usually forgets to send me a birthday card but this year he's promised not.
Richard usually forgets to send me a birthday card but this year he's promised not to.

1. I'd really like to go away this year, but I won't able to.

2. Keisha said I should go to her party tonight, but I don't really want.

3. I tried to find out Will's email address, but I wasn't to.

4. Frankie liked the birthday present we bought her. At least, she seemed.

5. I didn't realize that it was necessary to wear a tie, but apparently we have.

6. I'm very concerned about my test results, even though the doctor says there's no need be.

64.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS



Paul and Jess are discussing a concert they would like to go to.

Jess definitely wants to see the horror movie.
True ☐ **False** ☑

1. Paul invites Jess to see a rock band.
   True ☐ **False** ☐

2. The musicians' instruments are recycled.
   True ☐ **False** ☐

3. The musicians are originally from South Africa.
   True ☐ **False** ☐

4. Paul is not sure that he can get the tickets.
   True ☐ **False** ☐

5. Paul will call Jess when he has the tickets.
   True ☐ **False** ☐

64.4 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	I wasn't planning to go to the concert,	but I wasn't able to.
1	I'd really like to buy a new pair of shoes,	though I don't need to.
2	I'm not sure if I can visit my aunt this weekend,	but he can't afford to.
3	Jonas would really like to buy a car,	but I would love to.
4	I'll watch a movie if all my friends want to,	although I prefer to.
5	I don't insist on going to warm countries for vacations,	but I hope to.
6	I tried to get tickets for the concert,	but I wouldn't choose to.

64.5 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL



I said we should get coffee first, and she _____agreed_____ .

1 

I am always really nervous before I go to the doctor's. It's difficult not _____ .

2 

It's not certain that I'll do well on my exams, but I _____ to.

3 

Marie wants me to go shopping with her, but I really don't _____ to.

4 

I've never been to the US. I'd love the _____ .

5 

You can get a vaccination before your trip, but you don't _____ to.

need ~~agreed~~ chance expect to be want

64.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

can | We | to | movie theater | go | you | want | tonight | the | if | to.

We can go to the movie theater tonight if you want to.

1. but | listening | sister | to. | music, | hates | to | I | loud | love | my

2. can | work | to. | early | You | leave | afternoon | if | like | this | you | would

3. be | me | to. | I'd | her | Gigi | asked | delighted | and | said | go | wedding | to | I | to

4. agree | do | Don't | the | want | don't | fun run | if | you | to. | really | to

64.7 RESPOND TO THE AUDIO OUT LOUD, USING THE PROMPTS

Are you going to go to the show?

[decide] No, *I decided not to* .

1. Would you like to come to the gig with me?

[delighted] Yes, _____ .

2. Do you want to go swimming tonight?

[want] No, _____ .

3. Should I dress up for the party?

[need] No, _____ .

4. Did Miranda enjoy the play?

[seem] Yes, _____ .

5. Are you going on vacation this year?

[afford] No, _____ .

65 Expressing reactions

Although discourse markers often don't add content in themselves, they can ease the flow of a conversation and add information about the speaker's opinion.

New language Informal discourse markers
Aa Vocabulary Advanced prefixes
New skill Structuring conversation

65.1 CROSS OUT THE LEAST APPROPRIATE WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



~~Anyway~~ / Actually, the great thing was that everyone in Canada could understand me.

1 
Sorry, I had to take that call. So by the way / as I was saying, the gallery opened in 1903.

2 
I've been to that museum, too. Hey, I love your shoes, actually / by the way.

3 
This gallery is beautiful. Oh, anyway / by the way, did you see there's a new café downstairs?

4 
You think he's an expert? Anyway / Actually, he doesn't really know anything about art.

5 
Anyway / By the way, I'm afraid I will have to say goodbye now, but thank you for today.

6 
No, actually / by the way, it was George who thought we should buy this painting, not me.

7 
Mike's very happy because, as I was saying / anyway, he's getting married next September.

8 
Yes, I'd like some coffee. So, actually / as I was saying, we've got a lot of paintings at home.

9 
Anyway / Actually, I'm sure you'll have a great time in Tokyo. See you when you get back!

10 
So, as I was saying / by the way, Jenny and I have known each other for a long time.

11 
Yes, by the way / actually, I've already been here a few times, so I know my way around.

65.2 RESPOND TO THE AUDIO, SPEAKING OUT LOUD AND FILLING IN THE GAPS WITH THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

Andy Warhol is your favorite artist, isn't he?

Actually, my favorite artist is David Hockney.

1. Oh, that's right! I think they have a few Warhol pieces upstairs.

   Yes, but _____ before, I prefer Hockney.

2. Did you go to the exhibition of his work last year?

   No, it was sold out. _____, we should get moving!

3. Yes, it's getting late already. Do you want to see the new installation?

   I've already seen it, _____. I came here last month.

4. I'm going to go to the gift shop before it closes.

   _____, I've already been. But you go.

actually

Actually

as I was saying

~~Actually~~

Anyway

65.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

- He's really **superactive**. He always solves problems before they arise. ☐
- He's really **proactive**. He always solves problems before they arise. ☑

1. The fastest aircraft travel through the air at **antisonic** speeds. ☐
   The fastest aircraft travel through the air at **supersonic** speeds. ☐
2. Powerful computers can **prodict** the outcomes of some experiments with amazing accuracy. ☐
   Powerful computers can **predict** the outcomes of some experiments with amazing accuracy. ☐
3. The first farms in human history were established in the **Postlithic**, or New Stone Age. ☐
   The first farms in human history were established in the **Neolithic**, or New Stone Age. ☐
4. The **prewar** period, after the fighting had ended, saw an economic boom. ☐
   The **postwar** period, after the fighting had ended, saw an economic boom. ☐

65.4 READ THE ARTICLE AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

The writer visited a school of fashion.
True ☐ **False** ☑

1. The writer attended a freshman show.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
2. A reception event took place before the show.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
3. Skye Tyler's work is traditional and conservative.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
4. There was no postmodern art in the show.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
5. Neo-Gothic art reinvents and revises Gothic styles.
   True ☐ **False** ☐

Fresh blood

What influences young artists?

Yesterday I attended the graduation show of young artists who've been studying at the Royal College of Art in London.

During the preshow reception, I mingled with some of the artists in an anteroom next to the exhibition hall. I took the opportunity to ask some of them about what had influenced their work. Skye Tyler, 22 from London, told me she tries to be very antiestablishment.

When we went into the exhibition hall, I noticed that a lot of the artists had produced some interesting postmodern pieces. Others were influenced by a style that could only be described as neo-Gothic, as it is a reinvention and updating of Gothic art from the Middle Ages.

65.5 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT WORDS

	a room leading into another room	preview
1	see something in advance	antibacterial
2	something built on top of something else	anteroom
3	harmful to bacteria	superstructure
4	made longer	postpone
5	a new interpretation of classical ideas	superhuman
6	do something later than planned	preassigned
7	cure for poison	antidote
8	better than human	prolonged
9	allocated in advance	neoclassical

65.6 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PREFIXES IN THE PANEL



I'm afraid you can't come in. All tickets for the exhibition have been ___pre___ assigned.

1 

He's interested in _____ liberalism. I'm not sure what that is, but it's a new type of liberalism.

2 

I've been enjoying the _____ game buildup, but now I just can't wait for the game to start.

3 

_____ classical architecture became popular when interest in ancient Greece rose again.

4 

We've organized a _____ conference event so people can meet before the meetings start.

5 

James must be _____ human! It's amazing how he manages to work and travel so much.

6 

She specializes in _____ natal care, so she looks after newborn babies.

7 

_____ modern art was a reaction by artists against the modernist art that came before it.

8 

Instead of finishing her degree, she's decided to _____ pone her studies and go traveling.

9 

You first go into the _____ chamber of the tomb of Tutankhamun and then the main chamber.

10 

If I could have any _____ power I wanted, I think it would be the ability to fly.

11 

I've had enough of our neighbors' _____ social behavior, they're always making noise!

12 

We're celebrating the 50th anniversary of the introduction of _____ discrimination laws.

~~pre~~	post	post	ante	anti	neo
super	pre	neo	pre	anti	neo	super



66 Getting things done

Sometimes you might want to talk about other people doing things for you, rather than doing things yourself. To do this, you need to use different grammar.

New language "Have / get something done"
Aa Vocabulary Services and repairs
New skill Describing things people do for you

66.1 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	We don't like the logo they made, so	I'm going to the doctor to get it checked.
1	I look so much better after having	we can get the food delivered to us.
2	Don't worry, we got the problem	my hair cut at the salon yesterday.
3	Something's wrong with my back, so	we're going to have it redesigned.
4	Ask the people at the restaurant if	he can get the door fixed.
5	I'll call our landlord and ask him if	with the internet sorted out in the end.

66.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

going | my | to | checked. | to | I'm | the | dentist | teeth | get

I'm going to the dentist to get my teeth checked.

1 are | decorator. | house | by | having | parents | a | My | their | painted

2 a | it | He | car, | he's | can't | repaired. | new | getting | so | afford

3 taken | picture | getting | by | Sally's | her | a | photographer.

66.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS

Joanne checked her car battery.
True ☑ **False** ☐

1. Joanne changed the spark plugs.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
2. Joanne will have to get the car repaired.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
3. Lou got oil on Joanne's coat.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
4. Joanne will have to get the coat dry cleaned.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
5. Romesh will iron his own shirts.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
6. Someone is going to cut Romesh's hair.
   True ☐ **False** ☐
7. Romesh is interviewing someone for a new job.
   True ☐ **False** ☐

66.4 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE CORRECT FORMS OF THE VERBS

She's been *getting* **(get)** her articles translated by a young German student at the university.

1. Leah needs to go to the dentist as soon as possible _____ **(have)** her teeth fixed.
2. He's _____ **(get)** his birth certificate translated into English, so he can get married.
3. They _____ **(have)** a marquee built in the grounds of the castle for their party last year.
4. She always _____ **(have)** her essays checked by her mother before she hands them in.
5. My wedding ring _____ **(get)** stolen when someone broke into our house last week.
6. We've been having problems with our website, but we're _____ **(get)** them sorted out.
7. Jessica can't come to the phone right now because she's _____ **(have)** her nails done.
8. We've _____ **(have)** a lot of changes made to the house since we moved in five years ago.
9. He's been _____ **(have)** his hair cut at that barber's shop since he was five years old.

66.5 REWRITE THE HIGHLIGHTED PHRASES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

get

1 _____

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

6 _____

7 _____

8 _____

9 _____

10 _____

DO IT YOURSELF

Organize a conference

Here's a list of things to keep in mind

If you want to organize a conference, you need to have organized. The first thing you need to do is have a venue sorted out. You can do this yourself or get someone find one for you. Once you've get this organized, get someone who works at the venue give you an overview of the costs. You can then write a call for papers and get colleagues share it with people they know. Make a program and got it printed. If you're have the programs delivered, make sure the printer knows whether they should deliver them to your home or to the venue. On the day before the conference, get all of the lights and equipment check by the venue staff and then checked them again yourself! If you've have your conference staff trained in how to deal with the delegates at the conference, they'll know exactly what to do on the day.

66.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, USING "HAVE" OR "GET"

The hairdresser cut my hair. **(have)**
I had my hair cut.

1 I ordered a pizza delivery for dinner. **(get)**

_____

2 A mechanic fixed my car. **(get)**

_____

3 A decorator is painting our house. **(have)**

_____

4 My shirts are being dry-cleaned. **(get)**

_____

5 A photographer took my picture. **(get)**

_____

6 Someone repaired the oven. **(get)**

_____

7 A dentist checked my teeth. **(get)**

_____

8 Someone is landscaping their garden. **(have)**

_____

9 A student translated my essay. **(have)**

_____

10 My eyesight was tested at the hospital. **(get)**

_____

11 The hotel staff did my laundry. **(get)**

_____

66.7 RESPOND OUT LOUD TO THE AUDIO, USING THE PHRASES IN THE PANEL

Where's Gina?

She's in the bathroom. She's still _____getting ready_____ for the party.

1. Where did you go?

   I'm having problems with my eyes, so I went to the optician to _____.

2. Where is your purse?

   You won't believe it. I _____ when we were on vacation!

3. I'm really hungry. How can I get a pizza?

   You can either pick the pizza up from the restaurant or you can _____.

4. When will I get my business cards?

   The business cards are here. Would you like me to _____ to your home address?

5. Is that an old jacket you're wearing?

   No, but I can't believe how filthy it is. I need to _____ as soon as possible.

6. Is your internet up again?

   No, the internet at home still isn't working properly. We need to _____ this week.

7. Are you allowed to have long hair at your new job?

   No, I'm going to the hairdresser's to _____.

get it sorted out	had it stolen	~~getting ready~~	get them checked
have it dry-cleaned	have it cut	have it delivered	have them sent

67 Complex agreement

One of the basic principles of English is that subjects and verbs must agree. Some subjects, however, can behave as singular or plural nouns depending on their context.

New language Complex agreement
Aa Vocabulary Collective nouns
New skill Using the correct agreement

67.1 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE COLLECTIVE NOUNS IN THE PANEL



The whole *fleet* is out today and it's sailing across to the other side of the channel.

1 

The _____ was so appreciative of our performance that they gave us three encores.

2 

All the _____ at the hotel where we stayed were extremely friendly and helpful.

3 

My son's _____ is doing a concert at the town hall on Saturday evening.

4 

Jake's _____ is always arguing. His brother and sister are the worst.

5 

Next week, all the _____ in the office are going to do extra training.

6 

The _____ is holding an emergency session to discuss foreign policy issues.

7 

Our _____ is known for being the most environmentally friendly in the company.

8 

My _____ is the market leader in the digital industry and has been for 10 years now.

9 

Later this afternoon our _____ is going to be discussing the issues you mentioned.

family orchestra government staff ~~fleet~~
teams department audience panel company

67.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Singing Stars are my favorite TV program. I watch it every Saturday night. ☐
Singing Stars is my favorite TV program. I watch it every Saturday night. ☑

1. Spain have a very long border with Portugal. It's one of the longest in Europe. ☐
   Spain has a very long border with Portugal. It's one of the longest in Europe. ☐
2. The Netherlands are of the best countries to go on vacation if you like cycling. ☐
   The Netherlands is one of the best countries to go on vacation if you like cycling. ☐
3. He's great at soccer, but athletics is the sport that he wants to focus on from now on. ☐
   He's great at soccer, but athletics are the sport that he wants to focus on from now on. ☐
4. Politics were my favorite subject at school, so I decided to study it in college. ☐
   Politics was my favorite subject at school, so I decided to study it in college. ☐
5. The news about the celebrity couple were very hard to believe. ☐
   The news about the celebrity couple was very hard to believe. ☐

67.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	Neither my brother nor my sister	is connected to the internet.
1	Either an essay or a report	know when our test will be.
2	Neither my mom nor my dad	is the best gift to give someone.
3	Neither my cell phone nor my laptop	has green eyes like mine.
4	Media studies is a very popular	is required by the end of this week.
5	I think that either a dog or a cat	that's the most interesting to me.
6	Neither my teacher nor my friends	was there when I got home.
7	Either a box of chocolates or some perfume	is the best pet to get.
8	Logistics is the area of the business world	subject among the students.

67.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

The news **is** / ~~**are**~~ always depressing. There are so many stories about bad things that are happening.

1. All of the information about this **is** / **are** available to you on the college's website.
2. Neither my dad nor my mom **was** / **were** very happy when I got suspended from school.
3. **Is** / **Are** *The Dragon Leader* a good book or do you not like fantasy novels?
4. Either pop music or rock music **is** / **are** what I like to listen to when I'm relaxing.
5. Physics **is** / **are** what Charlie studied in college, too.
6. Politics **is** / **are** slowly moving to the left in this country at the moment.
7. **Is** / **Are** the mathematics you're doing in your class very difficult or can you do it easily?
8. Neither my presentation nor my essay **was** / **were** good enough to get me a passing grade.
9. The Bahamas **has** / **have** very warm weather at this time of year, so I'd recommend going there.
10. Either English or Spanish **is** / **are** the language that people most commonly learn at our school.

67.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND ANSWER THE QUESTIONS



Neil, a student, is talking about a popular subject in college.

Economics is very popular in college.
True ☑ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

1. There are 400 new economics students this year.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

2. Economics with tourism is popular.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

3. Neil is studying mathematics now.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

4. Neil thinks mathematics is too difficult for him.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

5. Both of Neil's parents went to college.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

6. Neil's parents don't put a lot of pressure on him.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

7. Neil still lives near his family.
True ☐ **False** ☐ **Not given** ☐

67.6 SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD, CHOOSING THE CORRECT WORDS

The Netherlands **is** / ~~**are**~~ the country where I grew up, but now I live in France.

1. *Jungle Adventures* **is** / **are** the new television show that everyone is talking about.
2. The US **is** / **are** the largest country in North America when it comes to population.
3. This information **need** / **needs** to be shared with everyone else in the team right away.
4. Neither the adults nor the children **was** / **were** interested in the entertainment they provided.
5. I think politics **isn't** / **aren't** a topic that you should discuss when you're making small talk.
6. Neither my black suit nor my dark blue one **is** / **are** clean enough to wear.
7. Neither my phone nor Clark's phone **is** / **are** getting any signal at the moment.
8. Either the lemon or the lime **was** / **were** too strong in the sauce he made.
9. Everyone in Jack's family **is** / **are** interested in birdwatching, so he's going on a trip with them.
10. Neither history nor business **is** / **are** interesting to me.

68 "So" and "such"

You can use "so" and "such" with certain words to add emphasis. They are similar in meaning, but they are used in different structures.

New language "So" and "such" for emphasis
Aa Vocabulary Medical science
New skill Emphasizing descriptions

68.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

You're so / ~~such~~ amazing! You've had three operations this year and you're still smiling!

1. Last night my mom called me to say that my grandma was very ill. It was so / such a shock.
2. Hong Kong is so / such a fascinating city. You should go there if you get the chance.
3. You've got so / such a difficult job. I don't think I'm patient enough to be a teacher.
4. He carried the baby so / such gently, as if he was scared she might break.
5. I can't believe I've got a job in Paris! It's so / such exciting!
6. That movie was so / such gripping. It was almost three hours long, but the time flew past!
7. You've got so / such a beautiful smile. Has anyone ever told you that?
8. It's always so / such a pleasure to spend time with Tom. He's a lovely man.
9. Keira is so / such generous. Did you know that she gave $250 to charity last month?
10. I'm not surprised the police stopped Mick. He drives so / such dangerously.
11. Thanks for responding so / such quickly. That was really efficient of you.
12. It was so / such a surprise when my cat turned up after being missing for six months!
13. You behaved so / such rudely in front of our guests. I felt quite embarrassed.
14. You learn languages so / such easily! Can you share your secret with me?
15. I think Martin is so / such brave. I couldn't do a bungee jump.
16. Your present job is so / such interesting. Is it also well paid, unlike the previous one?
17. *Back to City Life* was so / such a great book. I want to read it again!
18. It was so / such a relief when the doctor told me the good news. I've been celebrating.
19. I've had so / such a fun evening. Can I see you again tomorrow?

68.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	The doctor was so tired	that everyone was surprised.
1	The medicine works so effectively	that she was off work for months.
2	It was such a bad injury	that he's sure to go on to college.
3	It was such an unexpected result	that he nearly fell asleep!
4	He recovered so quickly	that I didn't really feel worried.
5	Brian is so intelligent	that we have a 98 percent cure rate.
6	The doctor was so reassuring	that he was back at work within two weeks.

68.3 FILL IN THE GAPS USING "SO" OR "SUCH"



Elizabeth had ___so___ little experience in her role as teacher that she was really nervous.

1 

It's _____ a beautiful day. Why don't we go for a walk on the beach?

2 

I am _____ grateful to the doctors that I'm going to send them a thank you card.

3 

It was _____ a thrill to spend time with my grandchildren.

4 

The movie was _____ boring that Pauline and I fell asleep.

5 

It was _____ a surprise that I didn't know what to say.

6 

Chantelle is _____ helpful. She's a lovely young woman.

7 

Tom reacted _____ bravely when the doctor told him he had to go into the hospital.

68.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

So much surgeons have to work extremely long hours these days.
So many surgeons have to work extremely long hours these days.

1. Such few people eat enough fruit and vegetables every day.
2. Such little funding is available for research into age-related diseases.
3. There are so much medicines to choose from for your condition.
4. Such many wonderful people work in our health service.
5. Charis feels so better since she started doing more exercise.
6. Such few students are bright enough to become doctors and engineers.
7. So many effort goes into making sure the patients are comfortable.
8. Such little money is spent on healthcare services for the disabled.
9. Such many people know someone who has been in the hospital.
10. There has been so many amazing progress in the field of medicine in the last decade.
11. So many time and money has been put into designing this new hospital.
12. It's so easier to play sports since I lost a lot of weight.

68.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Medical treatments today are such much better than they used to be. ☐
Medical treatments today are so much better than they used to be. ☑

1. Lyndsey is so an inspiration to me. I follow everything she posts on her blog. ☐
   Lyndsey is such an inspiration to me. I follow everything she posts on her blog. ☐
2. Jamie made such an effort to find the right present for my birthday. ☐
   Jamie made much an effort to find the right present for my birthday. ☐
3. I have so many free time these days, I've started some new hobbies. ☐
   I have so much free time these days, I've started some new hobbies. ☐
4. The exam was such easy that I wondered whether I had missed something. ☐
   The exam was so easy that I wondered whether I had missed something. ☐
5. You play the piano so beautifully! Can you play it again, please? ☐
   You play the piano such beautifully! Can you play it again, please? ☐
6. There are such few opportunities for people who can't read or write. ☐
   There are so few opportunities for people who can't read or write. ☐

68.6 SAY THE SENTENCES OUT LOUD, PUTTING "SO" OR "SUCH" IN THE CORRECT PLACE

The party was a success. [such]
The party was such a success.

1. These stray cats are a nuisance. [such]
2. I feel much calmer after a walk in the rain. [so]
3. You opened the door quietly last night. [so]
4. *Color* was amazing that I watched it again. [so]
5. There are many shirts to choose from. [so]
6. It's a lovely dress that I'm going to buy it. [such]
7. My dog is always hungry. She eats much. [so]

69 Using articles to generalize

"The" is the most commonly used word in the English language. It can be used in many different situations, as can the indefinite article "a," and the zero article.

New language Generic "the"
Aa Vocabulary Exploration and invention
New skill Using advanced articles

69.1 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

~~A~~ / ~~An~~ / **The** internet is probably the most important invention of the last 50 years.

1. My brother has **a** / **an** / **the** pet spider. I hate it!
2. I'd like a piece of cake and **a** / **an** / **the** orange juice, please.
3. **A** / **An** / **The** airplane was invented by the Wright brothers.
4. Can I ask you **a** / **an** / **the** question?
5. I can see **a** / **an** / **the** man over there with blond hair. But I'm not sure that it's Josh.
6. **A** / **An** / **The** bicycle is a very common form of transportation all over the world.
7. I have **a** / **an** / **the** arrangement with my colleague, where we share the commute to work.
8. There was **a** / **an** / **the** awkward silence when I asked Tami how her job was going.
9. **A** / **An** / **The** hummingbird is one of the smallest birds on the planet.
10. Would you like **a** / **an** / **the** cup of coffee?
11. **A** / **An** / **The** sandwich is named after the Earl of Sandwich, who supposedly invented it.

69.2 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE CORRECT ARTICLE, LEAVING A GAP FOR ZERO ARTICLE

The telescope was invented in the 16th century.

1. _____ apple a day keeps the doctor away.
2. _____ women are still rarely paid as much as men.
3. _____ human beings are the number-one predator on Earth.
4. There's _____ advertisement for a new smartwatch in today's paper.
5. _____ electric car is now a reality in many countries.
6. _____ students usually don't have very much money.
7. _____ panda is in danger of becoming extinct.

69.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

I'd like to introduce my colleague, Sophie Brennan. ☑
I'd like to introduce my colleague, the Sophie Brennan. ☐

1. I'm afraid there isn't a Mark Wilson in this office. Have you got the right name? ☐
   I'm afraid there isn't the Mark Wilson in this office. Have you got the right name? ☐
2. Are you saying you're good friends with a John Smith? ☐
   Are you saying you're good friends with John Smith? ☐
3. This is my sister's best friend, a Kristin Wyatt. ☐
   This is my sister's best friend, Kristin Wyatt. ☐
4. Let me introduce you to the manager of our company, Isaac Myers. ☐
   Let me introduce you to the manager of our company, the Isaac Myers. ☐
5. I don't know of a Lucy Armitage. Is there anyone else you'd like to speak to? ☐
   I don't know of the Lucy Armitage. Is there anyone else you'd like to speak to? ☐
6. You don't mean a Cherry Baldwin, the famous actress, do you? ☐
   You don't mean the Cherry Baldwin, the famous actress, do you? ☐

69.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Thomas Edison is widely acknowledged as an inventor of the moving picture.
Thomas Edison is widely acknowledged as the inventor of the moving picture.



1. I can't find the Mikaela Zimmerman in the company directory. Are you sure she works here?



2. Did you manage to get yourself ticket for the concert?



3. Cell phone has become a much smaller and lighter device in recent years.



4. Allow me to introduce you to my fiancé, a Brad Livingstone.



5. I had delicious meal at that new Italian restaurant last night.



6. There's no record of the Thomas Luckett ever having lived here.



7. Dog is often described as man's best friend.



8. Can you believe I was sitting next to an Elizabeth Parker? She's such a huge star!



9. Dress is often the most important thing for a bride at her wedding.



10. This is my boss, a Francesco Coppola.



11. We usually have the breakfast at about 7:15am.



12. Internet has revolutionized our lives since its invention.

69.5 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	The smallest country in the world	the oldest working bridge.
1	The company has captured	the office until Jane started working here.
2	The tallest waterfalls in the world	everything that happens in our bodies.
3	Izmir is the city with	is Sealand, located in the North Sea.
4	There isn't a Philip Fernandez here,	a significant share of the market.
5	There was a good atmosphere in	sitting next to the Jo Halls. It was amazing!
6	We all know that the brain controls	are the famous Angel Falls in Venezuela.
7	I couldn't believe that I was actually	so you must have the wrong number.

69.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

fastest | peregrine falcon. | The | bird | the | in | world | is | the

The fastest bird in the world is the peregrine falcon.

1 critically | Hawksbill turtle | The | endangered. | a | species | is | that | is

2 Stephen Hawking | scientist | would | me | told | become | day! | a | The | one | I

3 almost | every | are | found | Televisions | the | in | the | home | now | city.

4 afraid | this | list. | that | isn't | on | Susie Fa | there | I'm | a

Answers

01

1.1

1. I'm a sales assistant in a department store that opened recently.
2. Hurry up! The bus is coming. If we miss it, we will be late for work.
3. I'm meeting my new team leader right now to discuss plans for next year.
4. I get up at 7 o'clock every day to get to the office on time.
5. I always have a coffee break at 10 o'clock so I can work faster.
6. Today I'm wearing a new white blouse I bought from the store near my office.
7. She's working in the New York office at the moment, but she's planning to move to California.
8. I think I'm in the wrong building. Cathy lives in building number seven.
9. I'm having lunch in 30 minutes. Would you like to join me?
10. I go home at 5 o'clock every day after I finish work.

1.2

1. **I'm** the new member of the team.
2. **He always** sits at that desk. You'll have to move!
3. The train **arrives** at 7:22am every morning.
4. The bus is **usually on** time, but not today.
5. **I'm talking** to my boss at the moment.
6. **I'm working** on the new project with David today.
7. We **are a** very good team!
8. **I have** a meeting at 9 o'clock every day.
9. **I'm waiting** for you in front of the office.

1.3

1. I**'ve been trying** to call him all day, but he **hasn't answered** yet.
2. He**'s been working** all day, so he **hasn't had** a break yet.
3. I'm glad I**'ve finished** that project because I**'ve been working** on it for ages.
4. Jo**'s been cooking** all night, but Jim still **hasn't arrived** for dinner.
5. I**'ve been driving** for two hours now and I still **haven't made** it to work.
6. He**'s got** his schedule now and he**'s been meeting** the team all day.

1.4

1. Rebecca is from Australia, **isn't she?**
2. Gary doesn't live far from the office, **does he?**
3. They went to college in the US, **didn't they?**
4. You're working in the Singapore office, **aren't you?**
5. The new employees have their badges, **don't they?**
6. She's been waiting for 20 minutes, **hasn't she?**
7. Angelina worked as an engineer in New York, **didn't she?**
8. Mark has traveled to many countries in Europe, **hasn't he?**
9. They are planning to move out of the city, **aren't they?**
10. Alan should go on the training course next week, **shouldn't he?**
11. You have been to Singapore on a business trip, **haven't you?**

1.5

1. False 2. False 3. False 4. True 5. False

1.6

1. Maxine always takes the 7:45 train to work like Paul, **doesn't she?**
2. Your car is parked on the road in front of the company reception, **isn't it?**
3. Jonathan doesn't work in the sales department anymore, **does he?**
4. She worked for one of our competitors before she started working here, **didn't she?**
5. Nick and Philip have visited a lot of different countries on business trips, **haven't they?**
6. You would like to join us for lunch in the cafeteria today, **wouldn't you?**
7. Jessica didn't go to the strategy meeting we had last Tuesday, **did she?**
8. The boss should be showing the new employees around the office, **shouldn't he?**
9. Katrina and John know each other from their days in college, **don't they?**
10. He's been waiting for some time to talk to the boss about his promotion, **hasn't he?**
11. James isn't going to be the next head of the Human Resources department, **is he?**
12. Daniel should present the results of his research to the rest of the team, **shouldn't he?**
13. You worked with Janet on the project we did in Singapore, **didn't you?**
14. He works from home two days a week so he can spend time with his family, **doesn't he?**
15. Simon and Gregory are working on a prototype for the new product, **aren't they?**

02

2.1

1. Action 2. Action 3. State 4. State 5. State 6. Action 7. State 8. State 9. Action 10. Action

2.2

1. She's concentrating hard at the moment.
2. I hate video games. They're so boring.
3. He wants to move to a bigger place.
4. She seems to be a reliable employee.
5. He's reading a science-fiction novel.
6. I'm just cooking some pasta for dinner.
7. The package weighs four pounds.
8. I can't hear you at all.
9. Laura is appearing in the show this evening.
10. What do you think of me?

2.3

1. The items that the bags **contain** are heavy.
2. **I see** the mountains in the distance.
3. He **is weighing** the boxes on the scales right now.
4. We **spent** two hours doing our work.
5. I **believe** everything you say.
6. I'm sorry, but **I feel** that you're wrong.
7. I **was listening** to the radio when you came in.
8. This milk **smells** bad.
9. Shaun **usually arrives** at work at 8am.

2.4

1. William **wants** to travel around the world when he's older.
2. I **am tasting** the soup to see if it needs more salt or pepper.
3. I **am seeing** my dentist later this afternoon for a consultation.
4. My knees **hurt** when I walk too far or sit for too long.
5. My colleagues **are having** lunch right now in the cafeteria.
6. Michael **is being** all shy and quiet now that you're here to visit.

03

3.1

1. Laura **went into business** straight after school, at the age of 18.
2. The difference between these two cars is **clearly visible**.
3. You've studied so much for the exam. Now all that's left is to **do your best.**
4. I **distinctly remember** asking you to pack the passports. Don't tell me you forgot!

5 I think it's **extremely unlikely** that you'll win the lottery tonight.
6 I don't think Steffi likes me. She seems to have a **low opinion** of me.
7 The smell of fresh bread always **stirs up memories** of my grandma.
8 Bill made a big mistake at work and it has **ruined his career.**
9 I'm very lucky to have a **close family.** We meet up every Sunday for lunch.

3.2
1 True 2 False 3 Not given 4 True
5 Not given 6 True 7 Not given
8 False 9 True

3.3
1 I met my wife while I was in college.
2 When I was young, I loved climbing trees.
3 After I retired, I moved to Florida.
4 During the summer I worked in a café.
5 I worked part-time while I was studying abroad.

3.4
1 25 years ago
2 23 years ago
3 15 years ago

3.5
1 Stephanie **graduated** from college with an honors degree **last** year.
2 Bill **had been running** for many years when he **decided** to run a marathon.
3 Matthew **started** working at the company 33 years **ago**.
4 Leah **had** a baby **last** month. Her name's Sophie and she's beautiful.
5 Peter **arrived** very early **this** morning because he has an important meeting.
6 Jenny **was working** in a bar in London when she **met** Stephen.
7 Jenny and Stephen **got married** this year **on** June 7.
8 Stuart **had been living** in the US **for** 10 years before he moved to the UK.
9 When they **were** five years old, Anna and Jasmine **were** best friends.

3.6
1 Whether too much sleep is bad for you **is a matter of opinion.**
2 There is a popular belief that **the number 13 is unlucky.**
3 Lionel has gone into business, **selling clothes he has designed himself.**
4 There's forecast to be light rain later on, **so take an umbrella.**
5 When I smelled that perfume, it stirred **up memories of my first love.**
6 The airport is still closed, so **it's extremely unlikely we'll fly today.**
7 I'm not sure why Rebecca has **such a low opinion of me.**
8 The scandal over drug-taking ruined **her career in athletics.**

04

4.1
1 She's **an intelligent little** girl. She always does well at school.
2 It's a **horrible, ugly old** car. I'm not going to buy it as I don't like it.
3 We're going on a **fantastic, cheap** train trip across Europe for our vacation.
4 This is such **a comfortable old** sweater. I love wearing it in winter.
5 Gio always wears **stylish Italian** clothes. He is a fashion designer in London.
6 Today we're going to present our **innovative new** tablet to you for the first time.
7 Don't forget to try these **delicious spicy** sauces, which we've created ourselves.
8 I was one of the first to ride in a **unique high-speed** train while I was there.
9 Sometimes a **reliable low-tech** product is a better option than a more hi-tech one.

4.2
GENERAL OPINION:
nice, lovely, bad, awful
SPECIFIC OPINION:
kind, sad, ugly, tasty

4.3
1 My grandma is a **wonderful, generous old** lady.
2 I bought this **awful, ugly expensive** dress on the internet.
3 What a **pleasant, friendly young** man Peter is!
4 Jon's got a **beautiful, stylish new** car.

4.4
1 Lana's **dis**honest. She hides information and never tells the truth.
2 You're so **in**considerate. Think about other people for a change!
3 It was very **un**kind of you to make your sister cry. You should apologize to her.
4 Leon always has a solution for a problem. Unfortunately, he's often **in**correct.
5 Susanne is always being rude to her parents. She's so **dis**respectful.
6 Stop behaving like a five-year-old! You're so **im**mature!

4.5
1 inexperienced 2 arrogant 3 Esther
4 seven years 5 popular

4.6 Model Answers
1 He solved the problem by taking charge of the situation and seeking help from others.
2 He wants to be promoted into management.
3 He might appear rude because he is shy and awkward in social situations.
4 He can go on training programs to help him with his social skills.
5 Jenson needs to improve his social skills before he can be considered for promotion.
6 The review is generally positive.

05

5.1
1 It's **a shame that** some people aren't interested in learning languages.
2 It's **interesting that** you chose that book because it's the book that I chose, too.
3 It's **not important to** win. What you should be focused on is doing your very best.
4 It is **easy to** learn English vocabulary, but it's difficult to learn the grammar.
5 It's **good that** our neighbors are so understanding because we make a lot of noise!
6 When it's so cold outside, it's **important to** wrap yourself up as warmly as possible.
7 It's **essential that** everyone has enough water to drink while we're out walking in the heat.
8 It's **bad to** look at your phone while you're driving. You could have an accident.
9 Joshua has been doing so badly at school that he's **unlikely to** do well in his exams.
10 It is **difficult to** understand people when they speak English very quickly.
11 Look at those black clouds over there. I think it's **likely to** rain sometime soon.
12 Our train is so delayed. I think it's **unlikely that** we'll get home before midnight!
13 It's really **bad that** some people don't care about the environment. They should!
14 It's **important that** our children do their best at school and get a good education.
15 It's **good to** have all of the family here together again. I've missed everyone.

5.2
1 **It** is unlikely that I will finish this assignment on time.
2 It's difficult **to** decide what to order because it all sounds delicious.
3 **To** lose at this point would be very difficult after coming so far.
4 It's easy **to** start writing an essay, but it's not always easy to finish one!
5 It's essential **that** everyone follows the rules and does what they're told.

6 **To** read English is easy, but to write in English is more difficult.
7 It's important **to** choose an interesting topic to give a presentation about.

5.3
1 I have a certain aptitude for **navigating with a map, but I still get lost.**
2 My friend has a complete inability **to plan ahead. He's always late!**
3 It seems like some people have a **natural ability to run long distances.**
4 Dr. Finn had a remarkable capacity **to memorize huge passages of text.**

5.4
1 At a college
2 Surfing the internet
3 Natural
4 Tonal

5.5 Model Answers
1 Because it's important **to be able to communicate with people from all over the world.**
2 I think English is likely **to be a popular language for a long time.**
3 I think I have **a natural ability for learning languages.**
4 It's difficult **to remember all of the words and say them when you need them.**

06

6.1
1 once-in-a-lifetime
2 thirst for adventure
3 check out
4 go sightseeing
5 hopelessly lost
6 see somebody off
7 leg of a journey
8 look around
9 check in
10 feel homesick
11 culture shock
12 get away from it all
13 stop off

07

7.1
1 I usually get up at 7am.
2 I would like to check in early.
3 I need to check out by 9am.
4 He works out for two hours.
5 We always go out on Fridays.
6 Please line up here to go in.
7 Martin showed up at the party.

7.2
1 They want to check in at the hotel.
2 He keeps on complaining about his job.
3 She doesn't like getting up early.
4 She works out in the morning.
5 We're going out for Sheila's birthday.
6 He showed up late to work yesterday.
7 Jo, please come in and join us here.
8 Tim is coming down for my birthday.
9 Cooking is hard, but you should keep at it.
10 He always checks out early.

7.3
1 She really needs to **clean** her desk **up**. It's full of papers and old coffee cups.
2 The sixth grade students are **putting** a show **on** to celebrate the end of their time at this school.
3 Everyone needs to **hand** their forms **in** by Friday. Otherwise you can't go on the trip.
4 I need you to **look** a few words **up** in the dictionary for me. Can you do that?
5 I'll **check** the hotels in Monte Carlo **out** and let you know what the prices are.

7.4
1 It's not a problem. We'll come over and pick **it** up from your place.
2 He was so angry he tore **it** up and threw it around the room.
3 You should put **it** on when you go outside. It's absolutely freezing.
4 If you cut **it** out, you can use it to get two for the price of one at the supermarket.

7.5
1 He's always trying to **live up to** his reputation as a big spender.
2 We're **coming up with** some really good ideas at the moment.
3 I should just **get rid of** the things that I don't need.
4 She's so fast. I can't **keep up with** her.
5 Melissa's great. I really **look up to** her.

7.6
1 We all went to the airport with John and **saw him off**.
2 Her plane **took off** at 9:20am, so she should land at 2:50pm.
3 He always **stops off** to see his mother on his way home from work.
4 Hi Jonathan, it's me again. I'm sorry we were **cut off** just now.
5 The traffic was so bad that we **set off** at 9 o'clock and didn't arrive until 12.
6 I'm worried about my new dog. I don't think he **gets along with** Buster.

7.7
1 True 2 True 3 False 4 Not given
5 False 6 False 7 True 8 False
9 False 10 True

08

8.1
1 I **learned** a lot of Japanese while I **was living** in Japan.
2 While I **was waiting** for the train, I **met** my favorite singer.
3 As we **were walking** home last night, we **saw** a firework display.
4 We **stopped** at the café while we **were visiting** the castle.
5 I **got** off my bike a few times while I **was cycling** to work.
6 I **saw** a lot of cafés when I **was strolling** around town.
7 While I **was wandering** around, I **found** a good bookstore.
8 She **took** so many pictures when she **was traveling**.
9 I **was having** problems with my car until he **helped** me.

8.2
1 We tried a local restaurant because **the hotel receptionist had recommended it (to us).**
2 I went in the sauna after I **had been in the swimming pool (at the hotel).**
3 We rented a bike because **a friend of ours had said it was a good idea.**
4 They gave us a welcome drink just after **we had arrived at the hotel.**
5 We didn't have to wait in line to go in because **we had bought advance tickets.**

8.3
1 The Miller family **had been going** to Croatia for years before it became popular with tourists.
2 We needed to move around after we **had been sitting** on the plane for 14 hours.
3 I **had been waiting** for them at the airport for half an hour before they arrived.
4 Our team **had been losing** in the first half of the game, but they came back in the second.
5 She **had been studying** Spanish for six months before she went to Mexico.
6 It **had been raining** for five days in a row before we had some sunshine.

8.4
1 She **had been planning** to cycle across China, but then she **had** an accident on her bike.

2 When they **got** back home, they discovered that someone **had burgled** their house.
3 After I **had been traveling** around Asia for six months, I **felt** very happy to be back home.
4 Before I **went** to South America, I **hadn't tried** tango dancing.
5 He **wanted** to visit the fjords because he **had heard** they were beautiful.

8.5

1 I had written some practice answers **before the exam, so I was well prepared.**
2 When I got back to the parking lot, **I realized that someone had stolen my car.**
3 Before I started working here, I had **been working in the US for six months.**
4 I had given the matter a lot of thought **before I decided to change jobs.**
5 They were eating at a restaurant when **a famous author came in.**
6 She wanted to go to Spain because **her parents had told her it was fantastic.**
7 They had been planning to go out, **but they decided to go to bed early.**
8 I was feeling extremely tired because **I had not been sleeping very well.**

8.6 Model Answers

1 Jason had moved to New York a few months earlier.
2 Jason had been doing an internship in London before he moved to New York.
3 Jason saw the woman again a few days later.
4 The woman was the first person to write a message.

09

9.1

1 When you're in Berlin, you ought to visit the television tower.
2 I know! You really should take the kids down to the swimming pool.
3 You might want to take a boat trip around the lake while you're here.
4 Jonas could make a reservation. Then he'll definitely get a seat on the train.
5 Yes, it's awesome. You really must do that.

9.2

3

9.3

1 We had some outstanding food at Lionel's restaurant! **You ought to try the pasta.**
2 The room wasn't bad, although ours was a lot smaller than some of the others. **You could ask for a larger room if this is an issue.**
3 We can't praise our tour guide enough. She gave us such a lot of interesting information. **You must ask for Irene if you go there.**
4 I had trouble sleeping because the sheets were very rough. **You might want to bring a sheet!**
5 The staff at the bar had fantastic recommendations for drinks. **You really must try the cocktails.**

9.4

1 Like 2 Like 3 Like 4 Dislike

9.5

1 You **must** put on a lot of sun cream or you'll burn.
2 You **had better** take your walking boots if you're going to go hiking while you're there.
3 The firework display will be absolutely stunning. You **must** go and see it.
4 If I were you, I **would** take the train from Paris to London instead of flying.
5 You **should** ask if they have any vacancies at the Hotel Bennetton.

9.6

1 car 2 photographs 3 car doors
4 dish 5 photographs

9.7 Model Answer

Hi Jake!
How are you? It's been a long time since I sent you a letter, so I thought I would tell you about our family trip to Paris. **We went to** France in August and it was wonderful. **The highlight for me was** all the incredible French food! **I really enjoyed the** museums and galleries too. **You ought to** go when you get the chance. **If I were you, I'd** make it the next family adventure! **You must** come and visit us soon, too.
Look forward to hearing from you. **You'd better** not take a month to reply this time!
Best wishes,
Jaya

10

10.1

1 The plane is two hours late now, **so we will miss our connecting flight.**
2 Sadly, the project won't be finished **by the end of June after all.**
3 We might have time to visit the spa **if we leave now and we hurry up.**
4 Ask the rep from the travel agency, as **she will probably know the answer.**
5 He definitely won't be trying beef **because he's a vegetarian.**
6 It's unlikely that he will call, as **I don't think he has my phone number.**
7 When we arrive at the airport, **we will wait for you in the arrivals hall.**
8 It's very unlikely that it will rain, since **there isn't a cloud in the sky today.**

10.2

1 Likely 2 Unlikely 3 Unlikely
4 Unlikely

10.3

1 The internet has **fundamentally** changed how we book our vacations.
2 **Luckily**, we had nice weather every day when we were on vacation.
3 **Unfortunately**, Emma was sick when we were on vacation.
4 The trip home was **predictably** slow. There are always problems on that route.
5 They make their pancakes in **essentially** the same way that we do.
6 **Interestingly**, Winston Churchill had stayed at our hotel when he was in the region.
7 **Fortunately**, we were fit enough to be able to hike back down the coast.

10.4

1 **Luckily**, we made it to the hotel before the reception closed for the night.
2 Windsurfing is **essentially** sailing with a surfboard.
3 **Unfortunately**, the hotel is completely booked up.
4 **Interestingly**, the café was also an art gallery.
5 **Surprisingly**, Richard actually went in the pool. You know how he normally hates water.
6 **Predictably**, Donald got sunburned again. He never puts any sun tan lotion on.

10.5

1 Not given 2 True 3 True 4 False
5 False 6 True 7 True 8 Not given
9 True

11

11.1

1 grow up
2 run in the family
3 stick up for somebody
4 see eye to eye with somebody
5 make friends with somebody
6 click with somebody
7 give birth
8 drift apart
9 bump into somebody
10 put your foot down
11 look up to somebody
12 close friend
13 break up with somebody

12

12.1

1. I have bright blue eyes **like my mother.**
2. We live in different countries, **but we all get together at Christmas.**
3. My siblings are all very intelligent, **especially my brother, who's a scientist.**
4. My dad loves to play board games, **particularly chess.**
5. They like different TV channels **so they watch them in different rooms.**
6. We can video chat with each other **since we all have smartphones or laptops.**
7. She is interested in my life at college **because she wasn't able to go.**
8. I enjoy going fishing **just as my father does. He's great at it.**
9. My father is a great cook, **so he always makes dinner for us.**
10. We only see each other once a month **because we're all so busy now.**
11. It's hard to buy a present for dad and, **as a result, he always gets socks!**
12. We cook something different for her **as she's a vegetarian.**
13. My relatives all talk a lot, **especially when they all get together.**
14. Ann and I still stay up late chatting **just as we used to do when we were kids.**
15. I love cooking Chinese food, **though my family doesn't eat it often.**

12.2

1. My brother loves sports, **especially** ice hockey.
2. Our family usually goes to Greece on vacation, **though** last year we went to Turkey.
3. My brother got great grades at school, **so** he studied at a good university.
4. My dad works in the garden every day **as** he has a lot of free time after retiring.
5. My mother loves cats **just as** my grandmother did.
6. My sister loves music, **particularly** rock and pop bands.
7. My mother's always wanted to go to Paris, **so** we organized a trip for her 50th birthday.
8. We do sometimes argue with each other, **but** we never stay angry at each other for long.
9. My two younger brothers are very close **as** they shared a room when they were growing up.
10. My family isn't very big **like** my husband's.
11. We will have a big family gathering this year **as** all my cousins will be here.
12. Sonya is a talented painter **just as** her grandmother was.
13. All my relatives are good singers, **particularly** my aunt.

12.3

1. She searched for her mother's last name **online, yet she didn't find anything helpful.**
2. As a result of a friend's recommendation, **she decided to look at family records online.**
3. Her mother had many fascinating ancestors, **notably one who was an army general.**
4. Whereas her mother's side was interesting, **her father's ancestors were all dull.**
5. Therefore, she decided to concentrate on **finding out more about her mother's side.**
6. As well as the army general, **other ancestors of hers were very interesting.**
7. As a result of her research, **she felt more connected to her family.**

12.4

1. **Due to** the delay to our flight from Atlanta, we missed our connecting flight.
2. It was raining heavily, **so** we decided to cancel the barbecue.
3. My mother is always late, **but** my father is always on time.
4. Ronald Tuft received a number of awards, **notably** the Victoria Cross.
5. Her early work is very radical and her later work is **equally** innovative.
6. Hotels have to be careful **since** it's easy for guests to write bad reviews nowadays.

12.5

1. False
2. True
3. Not given
4. True
5. True
6. False
7. False
8. Not given

13

13.1

1. When I was young, we would **visit** our grandparents every weekend.
2. I didn't **use** to like olives. Now I love them!
3. Did they **use** to have a car?
4. In the summer break, we **would spend** all day at the beach if it was sunny.
5. We **used** to live in an apartment in Milwaukee before we moved to Chicago.
6. When I was a student, I **would look** for special offers to save money.
7. In my old job, I **would listen** to customers' complaints all day long.
8. Did **you use** to play soccer?
9. When I was very young, I **would not eat** any vegetables.
10. At school, my best friend was Leo. We **used to do** everything together.
11. My brother didn't **use to like** swimming. Now he loves it.

13.2

1. Did you use to have a computer at home when you were a child?
2. I worked in Paris from 2005 to 2009.
3. Liam has been to Los Angeles twice.
4. We didn't use to have to wear a school uniform at my school.
5. I used to ride a bicycle to school every day, even in the rain.

13.3

1. would get up
2. would cycle
3. used to spend
4. would get
5. used to moan
6. used to complain
7. never used to

13.4

1. Not given
2. False
3. True
4. Not given
5. False

13.5

3

13.6

1. Janine has similar **values** to us. She loves animals and she's a vegetarian.
2. Your dog is so **greedy**! He's eaten a bowl of food and still wants more.
3. I take **honesty** very seriously. I can't employ people who lie to me.
4. These days there is greater **acceptance** of people with differing points of view.
5. The best thing about Philip's **character** is that he is so kind.

13.7

1. Did you **use** to go to dance classes when you were young?
2. I **did** a lot of housework yesterday afternoon.
3. I didn't **use** to enjoy jogging, but now I do.
4. When I was young, my parents would **take** us to the beach every summer.

13.8

1. When I was young, I wouldn't clean up my bedroom. It made my mom really angry!
2. My brother and I would play video games for hours when we were young.
3. I didn't use to drink tea when I was little. Now I drink it all day long!
4. In college, I would often meet my friends for coffee after classes had finished for the day.

14

14.1

1. This train ticket is **half as** expensive as that one because of the 50 percent discount.
2. He is **just as** intelligent as his brother. They both got high grades.

3 Peter is **nearly as** good at soccer as the others. He'll catch up quickly.
4 My new place is **nowhere near as** big as my old one. It only has one bedroom instead of four.
5 The new album is **not quite as** catchy as their old stuff. I liked their first album a little more.
6 My new computer is **not quite as** fast as my old one. It's actually a little slower.
7 This new soft drink tastes **nearly as** good as SodaUp, but it's not quite the same.
8 The car was **nowhere near as** expensive as we'd thought. It was a real bargain.
9 They both worked hard. She deserved to win **just as** much as he did.

14.2

1 Frank's 2 Neither 3 Morello's
4 Morello's 5 Frank's 6 Morello's
7 Neither

14.3

1 This train isn't quite as fast as we'd thought.
2 He can't type as quickly as she can.
3 It was nowhere near as good as I'd hoped.
4 It tasted just as good as it did last time.
5 She doesn't shop as much as she used to.
6 They ran as quickly as they could.
7 The car wasn't nearly as fast as we thought.
8 He told us to do it as efficiently as possible.
9 Cooking took half as long as usual today.
10 I wasn't as confident as I was before.
11 These pastries are just as good as Ann's.

14.4

1 Most people think that if a product has a **high price**, it must be good quality.
2 My friend Robbie is a very **heavy sleeper**. Nothing wakes him up!
3 I was very pleased to hear that my teacher has a **high opinion** of me.
4 After traveling for thirty hours with very little sleep, I needed some **strong coffee**.
5 Discount retailers like this one sell everything at a **low price**.
6 Everyone leaves work at about 5pm, so there's always **heavy traffic** at that time.
7 I like **weak coffee** with lots of milk in it.

14.5

1 I love cakes and candy. You could say **that have a sweet tooth.**
2 Sometimes it's fun to spend money **on a three-course meal.**
3 My brother is a businessman **so he has to wine-and-dine clients.**
4 The dinner party was amazing. My friends **went out of their way to cook for us.**
5 He cooked an interesting **savory dish using tofu and fish.**

14.6 Model Answers

1 Catherine was not quite as enthusiastic about banking as her sister was.
2 Catherine's friends were working about half as many hours as she was.
3 Catherine's mom was just as worried as her dad about how much she was working.
4 Catherine thought her second experience of studying was not quite as scary as her first.
5 The photography major was just as interesting as Catherine had thought it would be.

15

15.1

1 The more I think about the exam, **the more nervous I feel.**
2 The older you are, **the wiser you become.**
3 The more the boat shook, **the more frightened we felt.**
4 The more advanced the course becomes, **the more difficult it gets.**
5 The higher up the mountain you go, **the colder it gets.**

15.2

1 The more I earn, the more I save.
2 The more time we spend outdoors, the happier we feel.
3 The harder Joel works, the unhappier he becomes.

15.3

1 The **more** difficult a challenge is, the **more** I enjoy it.
2 The **earlier** you start working on the project, **the** sooner you'll finish.
3 **The longer** an action film is, **the** less I want to watch it.
4 The **hotter** it is, **the thirstier** I become in the summer months.
5 The **angrier** Peter gets, **the less** sure I become of how to react.
6 **The** more successful my sister becomes, **the** more stressed she gets.
7 The **friendlier** a person is, the more popular they are at work.
8 The more I study, the less **certain** I become of what I know.
9 The **more** dangerous an adventure sport is, the more I like it.
10 **The** further you swim in the mornings and evenings, **the** fitter you'll become.
11 The **less** junk food you eat in the day, the **slimmer** you'll get.
12 **The** more interviews with successful people I read, **the** more I realize success is down to hard work.

15.4

1 busier and busier 2 and more tired
3 the earlier the better 4 and more stressful
5 the sooner the better

15.5

1 Because of climate change, temperatures on Earth are getting **hotter and hotter**.
2 In developed countries, people are getting **richer and richer**. Is this fair?
3 Ben practices the piano every day so he's getting **better and better**.
4 Every time I look at my baby daughter she seems **more and more beautiful** to me.
5 I waved as the boat got **farther and farther** away, and a tear slid down my cheek.

16

16.1

1 enrol in
2 attend classes
3 strikingly different
4 take a test / take an exam
5 contrast differences
6 undergraduate
7 meet a deadline
8 a world of difference
9 miss a deadline
10 continuous assessment
11 postgraduate
12 give someone feedback on something
13 clear distinction

17

17.1

1 such as = **for example**
2 additionally = **in addition**
3 furthermore = **moreover**
4 therefore = **as a result**
5 to conclude = **in conclusion**

17.2

1 It is, therefore, easier to study **in a place where you know the language.**
2 There are a lot of possibilities. For **example, studying at a university.**
3 First, you have to think about **what the benefits would be.**
4 In conclusion, I think studying **abroad is something everyone should try.**
5 Moreover, you also have the chance **to meet people from other countries.**
6 If you know Spanish, for instance, **go to a Spanish-speaking country.**

17.3

1 False 2 False 3 True 4 False
5 True 6 False

17.4

SEQUENCING: **first**, **second**, **third**
EXAMPLES: **for example**, **for instance**, **such as**
ADDING: **additionally**, **moreover**
CONCLUDING: **to sum up**, **overall**, **in conclusion**

17.5

1 If **they want** to go on the trip, they'll need to sign up today.
2 Unless **we get** three more registrations, we won't be able to run the class.
3 If he wants to join the Spanish class, he **will need** to email me this evening.
4 If **you join** the committee, you will have to give up a lot of your free time.
5 If you want to meet up for coffee later, I **will be** in the library.
6 I **will have** to cancel Tuesday's class unless we can find another room.
7 If **they want** to find out more about our club, we **will be** at the fair tomorrow.
8 Unless **we hear** from them in the next five minutes, we will start without them.
9 If **you are** a biology student, you will need to buy a lab coat by Friday.
10 If **you need** a study partner next semester, I might be available.
11 If **they are able** to come to the film night, it will be a great evening.

17.6

1 If you sign up for this study group, **you have to come to weekly meetings.**
2 When you are a student ambassador, **you are a representative of the university.**
3 You will fail the exam **unless you work a lot harder.**
4 When I give you homework, **I expect you to do it.**
5 Send me an email **if you have any further questions.**
6 If you want to find a part-time job, **you can go to our career center.**
7 If you're interested in hiking, **you can join the Expeditions Society.**
8 Unless you can pay a big fine, **don't take your library books back late.**
9 When you go into the second year, **you can apply to study abroad.**
10 I am always ready to listen **if you need someone to talk to.**
11 If you want to study French, **you should visit the language center.**
12 Unless you attend classes regularly, **you will not understand this subject.**

17.7

3

18

18.1

1 approximately half 2 a small minority
3 the vast majority 4 just under a third

18.2

1 In **a few** cases students are asked to retake the year.
2 In **a number** of cases students drop out and leave college.
3 In **some** cases students can ask to defer and start college a year later.
4 In **a majority** of cases students make friends for life while in college.
5 In **most** cases students live on campus in their first year.
6 **Just under** a quarter of students have part-time jobs.

18.3

1 False 2 True 3 True 4 Not given
5 True 6 False 7 Not given 8 True
9 True 10 Not given 11 False

18.4

1 In a **few** cases, the company will hire candidates who do not have a degree
2 Approximately **two-thirds** of students regularly buy fast food.
3 I'm not prepared to pay as **much** as $180 to go to a music festival.
4 In **some** cases, patients are asked to stay at home so they don't infect others.
5 The plane tickets are really cheap. They cost as **little** as $30.
6 Can you believe it? Out of 120 professors, as **many** as 90 can speak three languages.
7 **Well over** 90 percent of students complete their studies.
8 In a **minority** of cases, students will have to find their own accommodation.
9 In **most** cases, you'll feel much better within a week.
10 The yoga class isn't very popular. There are as **few** as three people at most classes.
11 **Just under** a quarter of students take more than a year to find a job.
12 **Just over** half of students meet their future partner in college.

18.5

1 False 2 Not given 3 True 4 False
5 False 6 Not given

18.6

1 Really? I heard that the class sizes are **really small**.
2 Is that so? My experience is very **different** from that.
3 Is that right? I heard that it is **clean and comfortable**.

19

19.1

2

19.2

1 Money for setting up a new business **can be raised** through these websites.
2 Rachel **had been selling** at local events before she decided to get serious.
3 Rachel found out that social media **was being used** by other entrepreneurs.
4 Rachel **set up** her own website by using a simple web platform.
5 Within a week, Rachel **had been offered** funding by eight investors online.
6 Rachel **took on** someone to work for her as her business grew.
7 Later Rachel **found** another crowdfunding website.
8 Rachel's new tea shop **will be located** in London.

19.3

1 Their products **were being sold at the baseball club last weekend.**
2 Social media **can easily be used by entrepreneurs to promote their businesses.**
3 Our detailed business plan **for the next 12 months will be written this weekend.**
4 His old catering business **had already been sold when he bought the hairdressing business.**
5 All of the cooking equipment **was delivered to our new shop yesterday.**

19.4

1 **Check-in** time at this hotel is 2pm. Your room won't be free until then.
2 Just put the **leftovers** in the fridge. We'll have them for lunch tomorrow.
3 Don't forget to make a **backup** of your files.
4 The police are looking for an **onlooker** who may have seen the bank robbers.
5 Let me make it clear from the **outset** what I expect from you.
6 In the first part of the lesson I'll give you a lot of **input** and then you'll be able to use it.
7 Getting angry with the boss in the boardroom was his **downfall**. He'll never work here again.
8 The police have announced a **crackdown** on bicycle thieves.

19.5
1 True 2 False 3 True 4 False

19.6
1 When my dad cooks, **there are never any leftovers.**
2 After losing my data, I know **it's essential to have a backup.**
3 Never share your login **with anyone for security reasons.**
4 There has been a crackdown **on social media use during class.**
5 I always prefer an early check-in **to make the journey easier.**
6 The police put up a line **to hold back onlookers.**

20

20.1
1 I'm taking my dictionary **in case I need to look some words up.**
2 What if I run out of time? **Then I won't finish the exam.**
3 Suppose I don't understand a question. **I will ask the examiner to repeat it.**
4 What if catch a cold? **That would make it difficult to concentrate.**
5 Suppose I forget to turn my phone off. **I would fail the exam if someone calls me.**
6 I'm going to set two alarms **in case I don't hear the first one.**

20.2
1 Likely 2 Unlikely 3 Likely 4 Unlikely
5 Unlikely 6 Likely

20.3
1 I know it's not likely, but suppose I **had** an accident on the way to school.
2 What if I **help** you review and you help me with my essay?
3 Suppose we **found** a rat in our classroom and the test was delayed.
4 You should ask if you can have more time just in case they **say** yes.
5 Suppose another fire alarm **goes** off during the exam. Will they give us more time?
6 What if we **didn't** know the answers to any of the questions? What would we do?

20.4
1 If you **got** 100 percent in the biology exam on Monday, I would be amazed.
2 We **will learn** much more quickly if we use an app to help us learn the words.
3 What if it **snowed** and we couldn't get to school on the day of the exam?
4 If my brother **won** the prize for the best student, I would be shocked.
5 My parents will be happy if I **pass** the chemistry exam.
6 If we bought a new car, we **would not be** late so often!
7 She **will not finish** in time if she doesn't start her project soon.
8 It would be so much less stressful if the teachers **gave** us some help.

20.5 Model Answers
1 If I could decide how long the weekend was, I would make it four days long.
2 If I have time, I will watch a crime show.
3 If I could go anywhere for six months, I'd go to Peru.
4 If I could have dinner with anyone, I'd choose Orson Welles.
5 If I had the chance to study abroad, I would go to the Sorbonne in Paris.
6 If I won the lottery, the first thing I'd buy would be a house for my parents.
7 If I won tickets to a concert, I'd go with my brother.

21

21.1
1 dead-end job
2 set your sights on something
3 hands-on experience
4 get ahead
5 be fired
6 be snowed under
7 tackle something head-on
8 take off
9 bottom of the career ladder
10 nine-to-five
11 laid off
12 give and take
13 working environment

22

22.1
1 After **completing** my studies I decided to take a year off and go traveling.
2 **Developing** original and innovative products is something I'm particularly interested in.
3 **Instead of** spending the summer having fun, I want to get a job and earn some money.
4 **Since** attending a workshop on project management, I have a deeper understanding of this area.
5 I've applied **for** so many jobs, but I haven't had a single interview.
6 **Before** starting my studies, I had earned very high grades at school.
7 While **volunteering** at a school in Peru, I realized how much I enjoy helping other people.
8 **As well as** giving me a strong theoretical grounding, my degree also gave me practical skills.
9 **Starting** work at your company immediately would be perfect for me.
10 They're **not only** doing interviews for the job, they're also asking people to take a test.
11 **After** completing my studies, I have gained some work experience in marketing.
12 After **seeing** the job ad, I knew this job was the one for me and I applied for it.
13 **Without** working in human resources for 10 years, I wouldn't be able to take on this role.
14 Since **qualifying** as a doctor, I've started working at a local hospital.
15 **Going** out into the community to work with people has been very valuable.

22.2 Model Answers
1 Experience of the logistics industry would be particularly desirable.
2 The candidate will be responsible for growing the number of visitors to the company's website.
3 The ideal candidate would stay in the company for a long time.
4 You need to have a Bachelor's degree or higher to apply for this job.
5 You need to be able to speak and write English perfectly.
6 You have to send your résumé and a cover letter to the company if you want to apply for this job.

22.3
1 I have recently **completed** a degree in mechanical engineering.
2 This has prepared me very **well** for working in the area of product management.
3 One course I **did** on brand design is particularly relevant to this position.
4 I have a keen interest in **following** developments in the food industry.
5 Thank you for taking the time to consider my application and I look forward to **hearing** from you.

22.4
1 The contents of my degree course have prepared me very well for **this position**.
2 I have a **strong interest** in the energy sector and have work experience in this area.
3 You will find that I'm a fast and accurate writer with a keen **eye for detail**.
4 I would be able to **take on** the responsibility that this position involves.
5 The experience I have gained in my previous jobs is **particularly relevant** to this position.

22.5

1. I think I would make an excellent office supervisor at some point in the future.
2. In my old job I experienced some conflict with colleagues.
3. I've organized a lot of events such as trade fairs and product launches.
4. Since graduating from college, I've gained a lot of experience in public relations.
5. I may look to move into a managerial job in a few years' time.
6. I would like to be involved with the organization of marketing campaigns.
7. As you can see, I have extensive work experience in the area of retail.
8. My skills are significantly superior to those of the average candidate.
9. Thank you for taking the time to consider my application.
10. My work experience is particularly relevant to this position.
11. I have an in-depth knowledge of product development processes.
12. I've wanted to be an electrician for a very long time.
13. I very much look forward to hearing from you.

23

23.1

1. Could you tell me if **you have any relevant experience in this area**?
2. I was wondering whether **your studies are relevant to this area**.
3. We'd like to know whether **you've applied for any other jobs**.
4. I was wondering if **you like working on a team**.
5. We'd like to know if **you're a good team player**.
6. Do you have any idea what **you would like to be doing in 10 years' time**?
7. Could you tell me what **your weaknesses are**?
8. I was wondering where **you worked after completing your studies**.
9. I'm curious to know where **in China you studied**.
10. Could you tell us which **area of our activities you're particularly interested in**?
11. I'd like to know if **you've ever worked abroad**.

23.2

1. Could you tell us which projects you've worked on?
2. I'd like to know how long you plan to work for us.
3. I was wondering where you studied abroad.
4. We'd like to know if you'd like to do further training.

23.3

1. Could you tell us **how you got along with your last boss**?
2. Do you have any idea **where you want to be in five years' time**?
3. I'm curious to know if **you've ever worked with children before**.
4. I was wondering whether **you've ever managed a website before**.
5. Could you tell us **why we should employ you**?

23.4

1. Would you be prepared to travel a lot? **Let's see. It would depend where you wanted me to go.**
2. Would you like to lead a team one day? **Well, I don't know. Managing a team is something I might be interested in.**
3. Could you come in for an interview? **Let me see. I'll check my schedule and let you know.**
4. Could you send us references from your previous employers? **Well, yes, that should be possible. I'll check with them.**
5. Can we count on you to stay with us long-term? **Maybe we should wait and see how I settle in here first.**

23.5

1. How many people are on her team
2. She likes to control everything
3. Her energy inspires the people on her team
4. She wouldn't want to earn less than before
5. Rose will think about what she would expect

23.6 Model Answers

1. **Yes, where to start?** I'm a dedicated worker and a great communicator.
2. **Oh, let me see.** I'd like to have a position in management.
3. **Well,** it's something that I enjoy and would like to continue doing.
4. **Good question, let me see.** I have a keen eye for detail and I always give 100 percent.
5. **Let me see.** I did once take over from my boss while he was on vacation.
6. **I'm not sure.** It would depend how much you needed me to do.
7. **Let's see. I suppose** I could start next month.

24

24.1

1. She finally managed **to cut** down the number of hours she works from 40 to 35.
2. I think our manager should allow us **to leave** work a bit earlier on Friday afternoon.
3. This new piece of software enables me **to make** updates very quickly.
4. Sam threatened **to leave** if the boss doesn't find a new employee to help him.
5. I'm the person in my office who always **volunteers** to stay late.
6. This is the first time that a colleague has invited me **to have** dinner at their home.
7. The merger deal we completed last month has caused our profits **to** increase.
8. He doesn't like people **telling** him what to do while he's at work.
9. The boss has offered **to send** me on a training course to improve my computer skills.
10. He enjoys **playing** the role of the hot-shot manager when visitors come.

24.2

1. My colleague enjoys **hearing** from satisfied customers.
2. My new smartphone **enables** me to stay connected with my office wherever I am.
3. She hates her colleagues **telling** her what she should do in her department.
4. We like our customers **to give** us feedback on the services we provide them.
5. My boss **offered to** give me an office of my own next year.

24.3

1. False 2. True 3. Not given
4. True 5. False

24.4

1. She always stops **to look** at what's on at the movie theater when we walk past it.
2. I remember **watching** that movie with Brian Owen, but it was a very long time ago.
3. She reminded him **to go** to the supermarket after work, but he still forgot!
4. I wish they would stop **looking** at us like that. They're making me nervous.
5. He finally remembered **to buy** me some flowers for my birthday. He usually forgets.
6. When I was a child, my mother always encouraged me **to eat** fruit and vegetables.
7. The turbulence caused the airplane **to move** from side to side for about 10 minutes.
8. He knew that we weren't interested in what he had to say, but he still went on **talking**.
9. I would advise you **to take** an aspirin for your headache.

10 Did you see Donald volunteering **to organize** the office party this year?
11 He tried **to push** the table through the door of our new living room, but it was too big.
12 The boss threatened **to make** us work all weekend if we didn't finish the project by Friday.

24.5

1 Jade remembered giving me that doll as a birthday present when I was a child.
2 The inspector advised us to change our safety procedures in the factory.
3 She likes people talking about how great she is. She has a very big ego!
4 The loan we got from the bank enabled us to build an extension on our house.
5 I'll write a note to remind myself to bring that book with me next week.

24.6 Model Answers

1 Jackie advises Lynn to talk to her boss.
2 Jackie suggests Lynn's boss could allow her to do a training course.
3 Jackie says that Lynn should leave her job and look for something else.
4 Jackie believes that Lynn is very talented.
5 Jackie thinks Lynn shouldn't accept people telling her she's not good enough to become a manager.

25

25.1

1 Jake lent me a pencil.
2 The teacher offered me some help.
3 She borrowed a book from Liz.
4 Susanne sent me a postcard from her vacation.
5 We donated some old clothes to the families.
6 They paid 20 dollars for the book.
7 John sent me an email yesterday.
8 I'm sure she told you the truth.
9 We gave the dog some biscuits.
10 He brought his computer to her house.
11 Joanne gave him her notes.
12 She lent her car to her son.
13 They bought the teacher some chocolates.
14 Brian passed the message on to Fiona for me.
15 Richard lent me his pen.
16 She always gives me a ride to work.
17 The teacher gave bad grades to those students.
18 Jason passed a note to me in class.
19 Kathryn lent her son some money.
20 They brought a lot of energy to the discussion.
21 He sold his old car to the neighbor.
22 They gave her some candy.
23 She gave some books she didn't need to them.

25.2

1 Robert gave me a lot of help.
2 Emma gave that book to me.
3 He lent his bike to a friend.
4 They passed the message on to me.
5 He gave his wife a great birthday present.

25.3

1 He sold his books to another student.
2 She bought a car for her daughter.
3 He passed the message on to her.
4 They donated money to the charity.
5 He lent some money to his son.
6 I sent him an email.

25.4

1 True 2 Not given 3 True 4 True
5 True 6 Not given

25.5

1 However, I thought **nothing ventured, nothing gained** and I decided to just go for it anyway.
2 Things really took off when I met an angel investor who basically wrote me a **blank check**.
3 Her faith in my abilities was the **ace up my sleeve** that gave me an edge over the competition.
4 As a result, I was able to **hit the ground running** and everyone was coming to me.
5 I had really **cornered the market** there.

26

26.1

1 take minutes
2 give a presentation
3 take questions
4 get down to business
5 sum up
6 show of hands
7 set a date
8 run out of time
9 on the agenda
10 board of directors
11 attend a meeting
12 conference call
13 absent

27

27.1

1 Anna, you're welcome to help **yourself** to tea or coffee and cookies.
2 I taught **myself** to use this computer program.
3 He is very proud of **himself** for getting the highest grade in his class.
4 You can all sit **yourselves** down anywhere you like.
5 We helped **ourselves** to the free food at the staff party.
6 I'm annoyed with **myself** for not thinking about that.
7 She accidentally cut **herself** while she was cooking.
8 The members of the team argued among **themselves** for about half an hour.
9 They're very pleased with **themselves** because their boss praised their work.
10 I often ask **myself** why I decided to leave the country and move to the city.
11 He felt that he had let **himself** down.

27.2

1 My grandparents are 90 years old, but they can still do everything for **themselves.**
2 He prides **himself** on his honesty and integrity.
3 Ramona is really busy today. Could you take this package to the post office for **her**?
4 You don't need to translate that for me. I can do it for **myself**.
5 They got the contract because they worked much harder than **us**.
6 You are all very welcome. Please make **yourselves** at home here.
7 Our neighbors were shouting at **each other** until 10 o'clock last night.

27.3

1 We want you to prepare the presentations **yourselves**.
2 The CEO **himself** mentioned me during his annual speech.
3 I am very proud! I repaired the bike **myself**.
4 We should be proud that we've achieved all of this by **ourselves**.
5 Food **itself** is changing and so are our eating habits.
6 They congratulated **themselves** on a job well done.
7 The shop manager **herself** came down to apologize to me for her mistake.

27.4

1 I'm glad that we were able to do it **ourselves** without asking the boss for help.
2 The presentation **itself** went well, but the meeting afterwards went badly.

3 All of the children behaved **themselves** really well during the flight.
4 The president's wife **herself** came to shake my hand and give me the award.
5 I felt very pleased with **myself** when I found out that my painting had won the prize.
6 This is the first time that he's been able to walk by **himself** since the accident.
7 I'm looking forward to having the house to **myself** while my parents are away.
8 You should all help **yourselves** to any books on my bookcase that you're interested in.
9 Your mother isn't going to wash your clothes anymore. You'll have to do it **yourself.**

27.5

1 I can't come to the English lesson as **I'm completely snowed under at work.**
2 The boss has asked her to **stay behind this evening.**
3 Customer service is something we **need to work on this year.**
4 My computer is not working. Can **you sort it out?**
5 On Fridays we usually **knock off at 12 o'clock.**

27.6

1 Sometimes, I'm so snowed **under** at work that I don't have time to eat my lunch.
2 I need to sort **out** these customer queries.
3 She allowed **herself** enough time to drive to the bank and park her car before the meeting.
4 Our project manager has given **us** more responsibility.
5 I'm still trying to catch **up** with the work I should have done last week.
6 We can't tear him **away** from the video game he's playing for more than ten minutes.
7 I think I have taken **on** too much work. I'm absolutely exhausted!
8 I always ask for challenging projects, but my boss never lets **me** do them.
9 Here's the safety information for working in this building. Could you all familiarize **yourselves** with it?
10 I'm sorry, but I'll have to ask Jason to deal with this. I'm completely snowed **under** at the moment.
11 When students fail their exams, they usually don't blame **themselves**.
12 When I take my children on the train, I bring some toys that they can occupy **themselves** with.

28

28.1

1 He can't stand **waiting** for people. He doesn't understand why people can't be on time.
2 I have to say that I prefer **cooking** for myself to eating out. I can eat whatever I want then.
3 I hate **moving**, but fresh flowers make a new house feel more like home.
4 How would you propose **solving** the big problems that we have?
5 Your flight had such a long delay that I began **to wonder** if you would ever make it back home.
6 He likes **to go** to a concert or the opera once a month or even more frequently if he can.
7 You continued **to ignore** my concerns even after you had seen the negative effects yourself.
8 I love **swimming** outdoors in a lake or in the ocean, even if the water's quite cold.
9 We started **to plan** our wedding last year as we knew it would take a long time.

28.2

1 In our family we usually prefer **beach vacations to city breaks.**
2 The design department proposed **making some changes to the sizes.**
3 Despite being tired, he continued **to run for the last six miles.**
4 We've always really loved **walking in the countryside.**
5 When I was younger I hated **getting up early, but now I like it.**
6 I have to say I can't stand **hearing music from people's phones.**
7 The music was so good that I started **dancing along to it.**
8 Ten years ago he began **saving money so he could buy a house.**
9 Marjorie proposed **putting more time between our meetings.**

28.3

1 Now I regret **asking** him about his family. I had no idea what had happened to them.
2 He graduated at the top of his class and we think that he will go on **to be** a successful lawyer.
3 We regret **to inform** you that on this occasion your application was not successful.
4 I remember **putting** my car keys on the table, but then someone must have moved them.
5 Don't worry, he won't forget **to call** you when he arrives in Australia.
6 After our success this season, we're sure the hotel will go on **being** popular next season.
7 Please remember **to write** to catering and ask if they can cater for 80 instead of 60.
8 Can we stop **to buy** some snacks and get coffee at the next service station we get to?

28.4

1 We stopped to get coffee.
2 I remembered to buy her a present.
3 I regret telling him that.
4 Did you forget going to Paris with me?
5 They went on celebrating until 2am.
6 I stopped going to the gym in February.
7 Sometimes I forget to charge my phone.
8 I regret to inform you about the changes.
9 I remember visiting you when I was a child.

28.5

1 I forgot to ask Valerie if she wanted to join us for dinner this evening.
2 I always remember to close all of the windows when I leave the house.
3 Who would have thought he would go on to be such a successful ballet dancer in the future?
4 The views along the coast road were so beautiful we decided to stop to take photos.
5 I regret saying that he doesn't work as hard as everyone else. He hasn't spoken to me since.

28.6

1 She had to go on working into her sixties.
2 We regret to inform you about the flight cancelations.
3 They stopped accepting paper applications two years ago.
4 Please remember to turn your computer off.

28.7

1 Why do you always forget **to buy** milk when you go to the supermarket on your own?
2 When are you going to stop **working** there and do something you really want to do?
3 Do you regret **getting** that tattoo of a dolphin on your neck now?
4 Do you think you would like **to run** the whole company one day?
5 Can we stop **to have** dinner at that nice restaurant in town on our way home?

29

29.1

1 She's a **brilliant** scientist. I'm sure she'll win the Nobel Prize for physics one day.
2 The fact that smoking can damage your health was **unknown** to most people until the 1970s.
3 It's amazing that such a **tiny** chip can contain so much data.
4 This scarf was handmade in Malaysia and the design is completely **unique.**

5 Could you please send me this document in a **digital** format? I can then upload it to our site.
6 The weather was **awful** last weekend. It wouldn't stop raining and it was really cold, too.
7 I think it's **disgusting** that there's so much bacteria on our phones.
8 She tries to avoid using cosmetic products that have too many **chemical** ingredients in them.
9 We're very proud of our **industrial** heritage, such as these 19th-century factory buildings.

29.2

1 They had an absolutely fantastic trip to South Africa. They're already planning their next trip.
2 He's absolutely fascinated by trains so we decided to buy him a train set for his birthday.
3 The delegates at the conference were largely European with a few North Americans.
4 We wanted to create a completely digital product for today's young people.
5 It's completely impossible to put this table together. I'll never be able to do it.

29.3

1 It's **hugely** important that as many people as possible see these billboards.
2 This product is **extremely** useful if you don't have very much time to spend on housework.
3 We think that our customer base will be **rather** interested in this new feature.
4 Our competitors' products are **wholly** inadequate to deal with these challenges.
5 The first design was **absolutely** awful, so we had to get rid of it and create a new one.
6 The coffee machine has a **totally** unique feature that enables you to make hot or cold milk.
7 I'm **utterly** exhausted after putting so much effort into the product launch last week.
8 The CEO can speak **quite** good English, but he's much better at Spanish or Portuguese.
9 Have you noticed that our new packaging designer is **really** talented?

29.4

1 I loved it! I thought it was **thoroughly enjoyable** and very funny.
2 I'm shy, so I'd feel **absolutely terrified** if I had to do that.
3 It would be so inconvenient! I'd be **utterly miserable**.

29.5

1 I thought the test was fairly **difficult, but my friend found it easy.**
2 Our product will be really **popular with consumers everywhere.**
3 The presentation was pretty **interesting and I learned a lot from it.**
4 My boss sometimes gets quite **annoyed if we fall behind schedule.**

29.6

1 False 2 True 3 Not given 4 True
5 True 6 True 7 Not given
8 Not given 9 False 10 Not given

30

30.1

1 He wrote a bad review of the movie **to let everyone know it's terrible.**
2 She took the toaster back **not to get a new one, but to get a refund.**
3 I looked everywhere in the store **in order to find the items I needed.**
4 The store gave them a voucher **so as to keep their business.**
5 He called the restaurant manager **to complain about a rude waiter.**
6 She raised her voice **so that everyone would hear her.**
7 We called the airline **to ask them to cancel our flights.**
8 You need to fill in this form **in order to get your money back.**
9 I called our internet provider **to find out when they will connect us.**
10 I talked to our neighbors **to let them know they're being too noisy.**
11 Now we check all of the pallets **to ensure the goods in them aren't broken.**
12 He looked for the company online **to find out what others think about it.**
13 I called the HR department **to find out about vacancies.**
14 He asked to speak to the chef **to compliment his cooking.**
15 She talked to the salon manager **in order to complain about her haircut.**
16 I covered the goods in shrink wrap **in order to protect them.**

30.2

1 She took her car to the garage so that the mechanics could fix it.
2 We use RFID technology so that we can track the goods.
3 He wrote a positive review of the hotel so that other people would know how good it was.
4 I usually get up 5am so that I can go running before I go to work.
5 She spent a lot of time planning her presentation so that she would be well-prepared.

30.3

1 Our products are made **to** withstand all temperatures.
2 Our career website is **for** busy professional people.
3 You can use this little USB stick **to** connect to the internet in any location.
4 This headset is **for** video-chatting and web-conferencing.
5 This hi-fi system is only **for** serious music fans, as it's very expensive.

30.4

1 Can we offer you a voucher **to show** we are sorry for the inconvenience caused.
2 I will be making a **complaint** about your airline as soon as I get home.
3 I'm not very satisfied **with** the product I received from the company two days ago.
4 Could you **let** me know when the basket of fruit that I ordered last week will arrive?
5 These workers are employed **to** pick and pack the goods in the factory outside the city.
6 Thank you for your prompt **assistance** with the ongoing matter of delayed product delivery.
7 You can use this device **for** cleaning the windows in your house quickly and effectively.
8 I recently **ordered** a pair of running shoes from you as a gift for my sister.
9 I need a **replacement** for this kettle as soon as possible, or else I will require a refund.
10 I look forward **to hearing** from you about the meeting next week.

31

31.1

1 extinct
2 harmful to the environment
3 wind farm
4 consume
5 fossil fuels
6 renewable energy
7 endangered
8 solar panel
9 destruction
10 climate change
11 reduce your carbon footprint
12 global warming
13 alternative energy

32

32.1

1 If I **had known** it was raining, I **would have brought** my umbrella.
2 I **would not have known** the party was canceled if he **had not told** me.

3 If I **had arrived** at the train station earlier, I **would not have missed** the train.
4 If they **had studied** more, they **might have passed** the exam.
5 If I **had known** you didn't like onions, I **would not have used** them.
6 If I **had not gone** to college, I **might have taken** a gap year.
7 We **would not have put** the box there if we **had known** that it would fall.
8 If I **had realized** he was unhappy, I **could have talked** to him about it.
9 I **would have worn** a suit if I **had known** the CEO was coming to visit us.
10 If we **had given** out more samples, we **would have sold** more products.
11 If she **had known** there was a test, she **would have prepared**.

32.2

1 If we'd known there was a train strike on, we would've driven there. 2 If I hadn't gone to that party, I wouldn't have met my husband. 3 If I'd worked harder, I might've been promoted last year.

32.3

1 I would have called you if I had **known** you were in town.
2 If we had taken a taxi, we **wouldn't** have missed our flight.
3 If I **had** left the house at nine, I would not have been late for the interview.
4 I would **have** made it home by 7 o'clock if my train had left on time
5 If we had known the movie was that good, we **would** have gone to see it.

32.4

1 False 2 Not given 3 False
4 False 5 True 6 False 7 True

32.5

1 If only we **had asked** for a room on the second or third floor. It wouldn't have been so noisy.
2 I wish we had been able to spend more time at that museum. It **was** really interesting.
3 If only we had been there in summer. We **could have taken** a boat trip on the river.
4 I wish we **had gone** to the Eiffel Tower earlier. We might not have had to wait so long.
5 I wish we **had read** the reviews of that restaurant before we decided to eat there.
6 I love that band. If only we **had known** they were doing a concert down the road from the hotel.
7 If only we had taken the train to the airport. We **would have arrived** there faster.

32.6

1 My brother always makes fun of me. If only **I had a sister instead**!
2 Why didn't I take your advice? I wish **I'd listened to you.**
3 I left my wallet on the train. I wish **I hadn't forgetten it**.
4 My presentation was awful. If only **I'd practiced more**.
5 I got soaked outside. If only **I'd brought my umbrella**.
6 I'm so bored at work. I wish **I'd taken time off**.
7 I hate walking. If only **I hadn't crashed my car**.

33

33.1

1 You **should** have separated your waste for recycling.
2 We **ought** to have bought fair trade chocolate.
3 She **should not** have wasted so much paper.
4 The company **should not** have dumped their waste in the river.
5 They **should** have used wood from sustainable forests.
6 We **should** have found out about the risks beforehand.
7 You **should** have changed to energy-saving light bulbs.
8 He **should** have turned the lights off when he left.
9 They **ought** to have reduced the amount of traveling their employees do.
10 We **should not** have cut down so much of the rainforest.
11 You **ought** to have drunk tap water instead of bottled water.
12 She **should not** have showered for so long. She's wasting water!
13 They **should not** have flown the goods halfway across the world.
14 We **ought** to have talked to the local community about this.
15 Governments **should** have made a law to stop this happening.
16 We **should not** have buried the waste in that landfill.
17 He **ought** to have turned his computer off at night.
18 You **should** have stopped using new plastic bags every time you go shopping.

33.2

1 We should not have dumped the waste in the river.
2 We should not have used so many pesticides in these fields.
3 We should not have overfished the oceans.
4 We ought to have switched to greener cars sooner.
5 We should have thought about the effects of the mine on the river.
6 We should have protected the wildlife from the oil spill.

33.3

1 We should not have built the dam there.
2 We ought to have started using renewable energy earlier.
3 They should have recycled all their waste materials.
4 We ought to have left the island as it was.
5 We should not have destroyed the orangutans' habitat.
6 They should have thought about the impact on fish supplies.
7 We should not have ignored what the protesters said.
8 We ought to have stored those chemicals more carefully.
9 We should have had more controls at the power plant.

33.4

1 overconfident 2 overloaded
3 overcrowded 4 overworked
5 overcautious

33.5

1 However, **following** the original explosion, a large oil leak was discovered.
2 It is estimated that oil was flowing into the sea at a rate of 62,000 gallons a day **by that time.**
3 Oil continued to flow into the ocean at this rate **throughout** the next six weeks.
4 Efforts were made to stop the flow of oil **during** that time, but none of them proved successful.
5 **Since then**, the oil spill has become known as one of the worst manmade disasters in recent history.

34

34.1

1 I'm **afraid of** getting trapped in an elevator, so I always take the stairs.
2 In recent years, there's been a huge **increase in** smartphone ownership.
3 My children sometimes **argue about** who gets to watch TV.
4 I always **ask for** a window seat when I fly so I can look out the window.
5 We'll never **agree about** how to raise children.
6 I think he'll win. All of the signs **point in** his direction.
7 There's been a **decline in** the number of letters people have written in the last decade.

8 The economic situation had the **effect of** pushing house prices down.
9 There's a **lack of** interest in the project among the people in my team.
10 I'm afraid I'm going to be **late for** our appointment this morning.
11 They're really **grateful for** all of the opportunities they've been given.
12 We **talked about** my previous work experience and career goals.
13 There's been a **decline in** the number of people watching live television in recent years.
14 When I call my sister, we **talk about** absolutely everything that's been going on in my life.

34.2

1 My husband and I sometimes argue **about** whose turn it is to do the dishes.
2 Frank is never late **for** any meetings in the office.
3 The course was canceled due to a lack **of** interest by students.
4 I know a lot of people who are afraid **of** spiders and snakes.
5 She's very grateful **for** the chance to study medicine in the US.
6 Marlon will talk **about** his travels in the Amazon rainforest this evening.
7 I'm so grateful **for** the opportunity you have given me.

34.3

1 True 2 False 3 Not given
4 Not given 5 True 6 Not given

34.4

1 We are currently searching **for** a suitable location for a new offshore wind farm.
2 The Prime Minister apologized **to** the public for not giving them all of the facts.
3 I'm so bored **with** news stories about how the Earth is getting hotter. It's freezing today!
4 If we reduce the amount of packaging we use, that will result **in** us having less waste.

34.5

1 **Environmentally-friendly** farming practices help farmers grow more food.
2 **This** government isn't going to stand by and do nothing about climate change.
3 What changes can **you** make in **your** everyday life to make it a healthier one?
4 There **isn't** a future for the nuclear power industry in this country.

34.6

1 talk about 2 suitable for 3 grateful for
4 leads to 5 effect of 6 agree about
7 points in 8 increase in 9 lack of
10 ask for 11 afraid of 12 decline in
13 argued about

35

35.1

1 I'm not rich, but I try to donate **a little** money to charity every month.
2 Sadly, there are **few** Sumatran tigers left in the world today.
3 I have **little** patience for people who are always late. I'm always on time!
4 There are very **few** people I would lend money to. But my brother is one of them.
5 **Little** can be done to completely stop climate change in our time.
6 Do you need some help to finish that report? I have **a little** time I can spare.
7 There are **a few** paintings in the museum I haven't seen. Can we stay a bit longer?
8 There's **little** point in explaining it to Jen. She never listens to what I say.
9 I know you're on a diet, but would you like **a little** bit of chocolate?
10 There are very **few** old buildings left in this city. It's sad that we've lost so much history.
11 I don't have lots of friends, but I've got **a few** that I'm really close to.

35.2

1 There are fewer job opportunities **than there used to be.**
2 People have less time for **hobbies and sports these days.**
3 Fewer people are interested **in local history these days.**
4 Our university offers fewer **courses than it did 10 years ago.**
5 I wish I'd brought less **luggage with me on vacation.**
6 Kelly changed jobs, but she's now **earning less money than before.**

35.3

1 Less money is spent on care for the elderly.
2 We all need to use less electricity.
3 Fewer people are worried about pollution.
4 I wish I had less work to do.
5 People are having fewer children.
6 Fewer people enjoy gardening nowadays.

35.4

1 False 2 False 3 True
4 True 5 True

35.5

1 She has been working for quite a **few** years.
2 I've earned quite a **bit** of money.
3 Amal has quite a **bit** of work experience.
4 There are quite a **few** students in this class.
5 I've spent quite a **bit** of time on this report.
6 Jo has made quite a **few** friends at university.
7 There's quite a **bit** of rice left over.
8 There are quite a **few** things I have to do.
9 It took quite a **bit** of effort to finish the race.
10 I've got quite a **few** pairs of sneakers.
11 We've got quite a **few** vacations planned.
12 She gave me quite a **bit** of useful advice.
13 There's quite a **bit** of garbage on the floor.

35.6

1 The park is empty. There must be **fewer than** 10 people here.
2 My daughter's school is tiny. It has **fewer than** five teachers.
3 Seattle is **less than** 20 miles from here. It won't take long to drive there.
4 Applicants should supply no **fewer than** two references.
5 The plane leaves in **less than** half an hour. We'd better hurry!
6 I've got **less than** $2 in cash. Could you lend me some money, please?
7 The company had to cut some jobs, so we now have **fewer than** 15 employees.
8 It's **less than** 10 minutes until the game starts. I'm so excited!
9 I'm afraid the course is canceled because **fewer than** 10 people signed up.
10 Jeremy is being paid **less than** all his friends. He wants a new job.
11 I always pack light. My suitcase weighs **less than** 12 pounds.
12 It's very disappointing that **fewer than** eight countries signed the agreement.

36

36.1

1 make a wish
2 set of beliefs
3 have serious misgivings / doubts
4 good / bad omen
5 gossip
6 word of mouth
7 drop a hint
8 pure luck
9 folklore
10 urban myth
11 beginner's luck
12 start / spread a rumor
13 believe in something

37

37.1

1 Chris hasn't turned up for training. He **might not** have realized it was today.
2 Your phone **might not** have been stolen. Have you checked in your desk?

3 I found a wallet. It **might** have been dropped by someone walking to the station.
4 Liz isn't answering her emails. She **may** have gone away.
5 I **may** have forgotten to send Lola a birthday card. I'm not sure.
6 That strange noise **could** have been a fox outside. There are a lot of them in this area.
7 I'm sure Les **could not** have sent such a rude message. He's usually such a gentleman.
8 Jen and Will are late. They **might** have missed the train.
9 Helena **could not** have grown 20 inches last year. That's too much in 12 months!
10 That bag is a fake. You **could not** have bought a real one. It was far too cheap.
11 You **might not** have caught the flu. It might just be a bad cold.
12 I **may** have left my glasses at work. I can't find them.
13 You **might not** need an operation. You might just need to take some medicine.
14 You **could not** have seen Sally in town yesterday. She's in China.
15 It **might not** have been Sally I saw in town. But it was someone who looks like her.
16 Your purse **could** have been stolen when you were waiting in line at the market.
17 We **may not** have bought the right ingredients for the cake. I'm not sure. Let's check.

37.2

1 She couldn't have gone out. All her clothes are dirty!
2 Anyone could have left the freezer door open.
3 They may not have remembered to close the window.
4 They may have had a party.
5 They may have forgotten to turn down the hob.
6 They might have made a big dinner for lots of people.

37.3

1 My car has a scratch on it. Someone could have reversed into it in the parking lot.
2 Your email could have gone into my junk folder. I'll check again.
3 You could not have visited my old school. It was turned into an office in 2012.
4 You could not have spoken to Jill on the phone. She's flying to Brazil right now.
5 I might not have said the right thing to Annabel. She looked a bit upset.

37.4

1 They **said they couldn't believe what they were seeing.**
2 She **said she wasn't lying.**
3 She **told me she didn't believe in things like ghosts.**
4 He **said he had heard a terrible scream the night before.**
5 She **said that she would never stay in a castle ever again.**
6 She **said she took a photo and there was a ghost in it.**
7 He **told me that they had had a lot of fun on Halloween.**
8 They **told me they were so scared that they couldn't move.**

37.5

1 I asked him how much his new jacket was.
2 I asked him if / whether he felt tired.
3 I asked her if / whether they were going to get married.
4 I asked him what he had done last weekend.
5 I asked her if / whether Carina was good enough to play for the team.
6 I asked him if / whether he was busy right then.
7 I asked him where he had gone on vacation.
8 I asked her if / whether she would call me back when she was free.
9 I asked her if / whether Robert was the new office manager.

37.6

1 I asked her what her favorite food was.
2 I asked him if / whether he was nervous about the exam.
3 I asked him where he played tennis.
4 I asked him if / whether she was easy to talk to.
5 I asked her if / whether they were a difficult team to play.
6 I asked them when they were going away.
7 I asked him why he was so sad.

38

38.1

1 Someone could have **taken** my coat because they thought it was theirs.
2 They **must** have already left. That's the only explanation.
3 He couldn't have **written** such a good essay without any help from his teachers.
4 There **may / might** have been an accident, but I'm not really sure.
5 I know it's unlikely, but someone **may/ might** have found the money and handed it in.
6 He might have **given** me the wrong directions. He doesn't know this town very well.
7 He couldn't **have** known that they would ask him a question about that. That's unfair.
8 It can't have **been** a ghost. They don't really exist!
9 She must have **been** imagining it. There's nobody upstairs.

38.2

1 Have you checked your phone? **She could have tried to call you.**
2 He's not answering the door. **He might have left already.**
3 I still can't get through to her. **She might have left her phone at home.**
4 They must have changed their address. **That's why our letters keep being returned.**
5 Have you looked in the top drawer? **He might have left the keys there.**
6 Their plane might have been delayed. **Is there anything on the arrivals board?**
7 You must have dialled the wrong number. **Nobody called Sheila lives here.**
8 We may have lost James and Katie. **They're no longer following behind us.**
9 He can't have thrown the tickets away! **They must be here somewhere.**

38.3

1 I **might** have won the competition if my entry had arrived in time.
2 They **can't** have lost their way. They know this area very well.
3 I **must** have done something to upset her. She's not speaking to me.
4 She **couldn't** have opened that door. She doesn't have a key for it.
5 They **may** have destroyed those documents. We haven't found them.

38.4

1 You must **have dealt with** a lot of customers over the last 20 years.
2 Mom and Dad might **have hidden** our presents in this cupboard.
3 He can't **have left** without saying goodbye. He must still be here.
4 The children might **have outgrown** these toys. They prefer video games now.
5 They must **have run** very fast to finish the race in such good time.
6 They can't **have told** you everything. There's a lot more that you need to know.
7 The students might **have gone** to the classroom we were in last semester instead.

38.5

1 True 2 False 3 True 4 False 5 False

39

39.1

1 If he **were** more organized, he wouldn't have been late for work again today.
2 If I had lost my job, **I would be** living with my parents again now.
3 If he had kept on learning English, he **would be** fluent by now.

4 If they **had known** how stormy it would be, they wouldn't be outside today.
5 If your aunt hadn't lent you money, you **wouldn't be able to** buy a house now.
6 If he **were** more confident, he wouldn't have failed his driving test.
7 If you had gone to college, you might **have** a good job by now.
8 If they had finished painting the bedroom, we **wouldn't have to** sleep in the loft tonight.

39.2

1 I would wear my coat **if I hadn't forgotten it**.
2 If we had saved more money, **we wouldn't have to be so thrifty now**.
3 If you had believed what they said, **you would not be where you are today**.
4 He wouldn't be so bad at cooking **if his Dad had shown him how to do it**.
5 He might be more patient **if he hadn't already been waiting so long.**
6 If he had reserved a seat on the train, **he wouldn't have to stand for two hours**.
7 She wouldn't always be late **if she had bought herself a new watch**.
8 If you had read all of the questions, **you wouldn't think that the test was easy**.

39.3

1 He would feel better if he had **slept** a little more last night.
2 If you had **prepared** for the interview properly, you wouldn't be so nervous now.
3 You wouldn't be stuck here if you had **told** the hotel staff about the problem.
4 If you had **set** off earlier, you wouldn't have to rush so much now.
5 He would be less stressed if he had **taken** more time out to relax.
6 If they hadn't **sent** our luggage to the wrong terminal, we would be home by now.
7 She might not be such a good typist if she hadn't **spent** so much time at the computer.

39.4

1 If he **had told** me how upset he was, I would still be there comforting him.
2 If I were a good cook, I **would have invited** you to lunch at our place by now.
3 He **would have stroked** Fido if he wasn't so scared of dogs.
4 If they weren't going to France tomorrow, they **would have gone** to your party.
5 We **could have gone** to the theater if we weren't busy tonight.
6 I would be surprised if Katherine **had wanted** me to go to the ball with her.
7 If the teacher were here, she **would have told** you all to be quiet.
8 If I **had moved** to America, I might be rich and happy now.
9 I would be happy to help you if I **hadn't already agreed** to help Jack.
10 If they **had learned** to ski, they could go on a skiing vacation next year.
11 If we **had looked** at the map earlier, we wouldn't be so lost!
12 If I had taken that job, I **would be** earning a lot more money now.

40

40.1

1 I can't remember what we decided about the color, but I'm sure it'll be bright, **whatever** it is.
2 **Whenever** I go on vacation abroad, I always try the dishes that are typical for that country.
3 I'm sure the new boss will do a good job and treat everyone fairly, **whoever** he or she is.
4 They always believe that they will win the lottery one day, **however** small the chances are.
5 She always ignores any criticism she gets, **whatever** anyone says about her.
6 **Whenever** I fly, I always make sure that I get to the airport two hours before my flight time.
7 I don't think I'll be able to find the answer to this math problem, **however** hard I try.
8 We could talk about this on the phone or I could arrange a meeting, **whichever** you prefer.
9 He always finds the time to call and say goodnight to me **wherever** he is in the world.

40.2

1 **Whoever** completes the questionnaire first will win an exciting prize.
2 We always stay in touch by text message or email **whenever** we're apart.
3 I won't give up until I reach the top of the mountain, **however** hard it gets.
4 I can pick you up at the airport or you can take the train, **whichever** you prefer.
5 I'm not going to put up with this kind of behavior from him, **whoever** he is.
6 We can have Chinese or Italian food or something else, **whatever** you want to do.
7 I always take a little first aid kit with me **whenever** I go on vacation.
8 I'm sure she'll look beautiful in her dress, **whichever** one she chooses.
9 She's determined to change his mind about the Nigeria project, **however** long it takes.

40.3

1 I always fear I'm going to have a bad day **whenever I walk under a ladder.**
2 Whatever happens in my life, **my superstitions bring me comfort.**
3 Whoever told you that **must be very superstitious.**
4 My mother believes in superstitions, **however often they prove to be false.**
5 Whenever a family member gets married, **I give them something blue for luck.**
6 This horse shoe will bring me luck, **however difficult life gets.**
7 She always wears that ring, **however strange it looks.**
8 Whenever she sees a black cat, **she thinks that it'll bring her bad luck.**

40.4

1 come rain or shine 2 throw caution to the wind 3 on cloud nine 4 a bolt from the blue 5 steal someone's thunder 6 right as rain

40.5

1 That's a bolt **from** the blue. I had no idea she was planning to leave the country.
2 I'm going to **throw** caution to the wind and just buy that expensive car!
3 My daughter was ill with the flu last week, but she's right **as** rain now.
4 I'm afraid I'll have to **take** a rain check on that. I'm really busy this week.
5 Whenever I give a sales presentation, Maureen always tries to **steal** my thunder.

41

41.1

1 be a household name
2 attention-grabbing
3 opening night
4 red carpet
5 paparazzi
6 talent show
7 become a celebrity
8 reality show
9 meteoric rise
10 sensationalize
11 celebrity culture
12 headline news
13 newspaper headline

42

42.1

1 These items have been **produced** in our new factory.
2 It has been **reported** that a hurricane will hit the coast this evening.
3 Those tests have been **carried** out in our new laboratory next door.
4 Following the meeting, it has been **decided** that we will increase our prices.

5 He has been **named** by the pharmaceutical company as their new CEO.
6 Our products have been **exported** all over the world since 1995.
7 The proposal has been **rejected** by all the members of the board.
8 There are **alleged** to have been a series of crimes committed by this gang.
9 It has long been **believed** that money isn't his main motivation.

42.2

1 It is understood that there **have been many flight cancelations.**
2 Our organization is thought to **be a trailblazer in the area we work in.**
3 It has been reported that **there will be massive jobs cuts.**
4 It was announced that the company **would recall its latest products.**
5 He is thought to have been **the most successful CEO we ever had.**
6 There are said to be **some nice walking trails around here.**
7 It is hoped that the next generation **will continue the work we've been doing.**
8 Norway is believed to be **among the most beautiful countries.**

42.3

1 This essay **should have been** handed in two weeks ago!
2 Unfortunately, the project couldn't **be completed** on time.
3 It must **have taken** us four hours to get here because of all the traffic jams.
4 She must **have thought** that the meeting started at 11am instead of 10am.
5 Any feedback you may have should **be sent** to our administrator.
6 The machine may **have broken down** because there was some dust in it.
7 Traffic could **be redirected** here during the festival.
8 Free samples can **be obtained** from our store on the first floor.
9 The booking should **have been made** earlier. Then we would have better seats.

42.4

1 The bell must have rung 10 times, but he still didn't come to the door.
2 There is understood to have been a car accident on Station Road this evening.
3 All of the books we sent should have been delivered to the venue by now.
4 It was announced yesterday that students can now apply for scholarships for next year.
5 The driver is thought to have lost his way while driving from the airport back to the city.

42.5

1 Yesterday 2 Young people
3 This isn't clear yet 4 They welcome it
5 Positively

42.6

1 A million gallons of water **were bottled at this plant last year.**
2 Our cars **are rented by business travelers at the airport.**
3 Another conference **could be organized for next September.**
4 All of our dishes **are made by hand by our chefs.**
5 It is hoped **that the supplier will accept the new terms and conditions.**
6 It is reported **that the traffic laws will be changed by the government this year.**
7 All of the company cars **are serviced in this garage.**
8 The solar panels on our roof **were installed by a Spanish company last month.**
9 It is agreed **that he would make an excellent team leader.**
10 The trucks **could have been unloaded in half the time that they actually took.**
11 It was announced **that she would be stepping down from the committee.**
12 It was claimed **that some students didn't get enough help from their teachers.**

43

43.1

1 **Approximately** 40,000 spectators watched the game at the national stadium.
2 The figures **indicate** that our population is aging rapidly.
3 Harris Mode is **arguably** the most handsome man alive today.
4 To **some extent**, we can all do more to improve the state of our health.
5 **It has been said** that unless we stop climate change, the ice caps will melt.
6 It has been **suggested** that the witness lied during the trial.
7 People who purchase violent video games **tend** to be young men.
8 **It looks** like we've missed the bus. We're going to be late again.
9 It **appeared** that the jewelry had been stolen in the early hours of the morning.

43.2

1 The teacher suggested that **Lilian should expect good exam results.**
2 If I don't have coffee in the morning, **I tend to get a headache.**
3 There are approximately 15,000 **people in the town where I live.**
4 It appears that the company **is going to make a loss this year.**
5 The soccer players allegedly **accepted money to lose games.**
6 It has been said that **there's no fool like an old fool.**
7 People often say **they don't have the time to exercise.**

43.3

1 The test results **suggest** that this is a new kind of bacteria.
2 **To some extent**, I'm glad Gina canceled her party. I don't feel very well.
3 Jess **seems** to have gone home early.
4 Carren Lake is **arguably** the most successful British tennis player ever.
5 It **appears** that we have no food left in the fridge.
6 It would **seem** that Clarissa is not answering my text messages.

43.4 Model Answers

1 The incident took place in Banff General Hospital.
2 The medical staff was surprised to see a deer walking into the Emergency Room.
3 The deer seemed to have been injured in an accident on the roads.
4 The deer must have walked approximately 10 kilometers to get to the hospital.
5 The medical staff took the deer to a nearby vet.
6 The vet said that it looked like the animal would make a full recovery.

43.5

1 True 2 False 3 Not given
4 False 5 True 6 True

43.6

1 To some **extent**, the project we worked on last month was a waste of time.
2 It would seem **that** someone has hacked into our database.
3 He has **allegedly** stolen $2 million from his employer.
4 It has been **said** that absence makes the heart grow fonder.
5 It **appears** that you have forgotten to pay your bill.

44

44.1

1 Only after trying to reach the summit three times **did he** give up.
2 Little **does she** know that we're planning a surprise party for her.
3 Only **when** it starts to snow do I stop gardening.

4 Not since the 1980s **has the team** won a major trophy.

44.2

1 Only after living there for five years **did he master the Spanish language.**
2 Not only is she a great mother, **but she's also a top business executive.**
3 Little did they realize **that they were in for a big surprise.**
4 Only when she read their stories **did she realize how well they can write.**
5 Not since his childhood **had he ridden a skateboard.**
6 Only after studying the instructions **did he understand how it worked.**

44.3

1 Little did I know that I would meet my future husband that evening.
2 Not only is he a talented pianist, he is also a writer.
3 Only when he came on stage did the fans start to scream.
4 Only after living there for six months did they talk to the neighbors.
5 Not only was the movie informative, but it was also entertaining.

44.4

1 No sooner had I arrived home than my son asked me to help him with his homework.
2 Little did she know that she would stay for 40 years when she started working there.
3 Never before have people from both communities worked together.
4 Not since I went to see *Sally's Song* have I cried this much at a film.
5 Rarely do you see a dog and cat that get along with each other so well.

44.5

1 **Rarely** have I seen so many people running together.
2 Little **did we** know that we would end up living in Italy.
3 **No sooner** had I reached the station than the train arrived.
4 Not since 1988 **have we** had such a hot summer.
5 **Little** did she know that she would win an award that evening.
6 Never before **have I seen** a child who loves reading as much as she does.
7 Only when I'd had time to recover **did I** realize what a lucky escape I'd had.
8 Only after experiencing it ourselves **could we** understand how difficult it is.
9 **Only after** preparing for six months did they feel ready to take the exam.
10 **Not since** my teenage years have I been so excited about a concert.
11 **Hardly** had he started to speak when someone interrupted him.
12 **Not only** do we produce these dolls here, but we make them all by hand.

44.6

1 True 2 False 3 Not given 4 True 5 True

44.7

1 Hardly had we pitched our tent when it began to rain.
2 Rarely do I feel as happy as when I'm alone.
3 Not since I was a young girl have I danced.
4 Only after calling him five times did he pick up.

45

45.1

1 What I would prefer is to take the train to the international airport.
2 What I really want is to hike the Inca Trail in Peru with my friends this year.
3 What I would really appreciate is some help with using the software to sort data.
4 What she was most surprised by was the party they threw for her birthday yesterday.
5 What we really need is some more time to get the booth ready for the annual fair.
6 What I hate is when people play music on their phones without using headphones.
7 What I really enjoyed was the day we spent at the local spa last weekend.
8 What he realized was that he didn't want to do that boring job for the rest of his life.
9 What I understood was that they aren't very happy about the sudden changes we're making.

45.2

1 The **time** I'd most like to go back to is Ancient Rome so I could visit the Colosseum.
2 The **meal** that I enjoy making the most is spaghetti carbonara. It's quick and easy.
3 The **subject** I liked the most at school was science, so I became a science teacher.
4 The **birthday** that I'll always remember is my twenty-first, when I had a huge party.
5 The **season** that I like the most is winter. I love walking in the snow.
6 The **famous person** I'd most like to have met is Alasdair Rove. I love his music and his style.
7 The **teacher** who influenced me the most is probably Mr. Lucas, my English teacher.
8 The **movie** that reminds me the most of my childhood is *Little Tim*. I loved it!
9 The **song** that always gets me up and dancing at a party is *Dancing Bells* by Claude Robert.

45.3

1 **Why** do you always take on more than you can actually do in a day?
2 **The place** that I would most like to be right now is a Caribbean beach.
3 **The person** I most admire and look up to is probably Shakespeare.
4 **The thing** he absolutely hates is people who talk while they're eating.
5 **Where** is Jonathan doing his Master's degree?
6 **The time of day** I like the most is first thing in the morning when I'm alone.

45.4

1 You went to France last year, didn't you? **No, it was Slovakia where we went.**
2 Didn't we meet for the first time in 2005? **No, it was 2006 when we first met.**
3 You met Sam at the party, didn't you? **No, it was Rosemary that I met.**
4 Wasn't it in Paris that he proposed? **No, actually it was in New York.**
5 Weren't we 10 when we went to Peru? **No, it was when we were 11.**
6 Wasn't it Mrs. Kins who taught us French? **No, it was Mrs. Bond who took that class.**
7 Didn't John go running with Philip? **No, it was David he did that with.**
8 Did you make this cake here? **No, it was Joanne who made that one.**
9 He majored in history in college, didn't he? **No, it was physics that he majored in.**

45.5

1 It was the young man at the visitor center that helped us a lot in New York.
2 It was an old lady that helped us find the way when we were lost in that Greek village.
3 It was your colleague Charles that I met at the Christmas party last year.
4 It was a restaurant in Florence where we ate the delicious steak by the river.
5 I think it was our second year in college when the two of us first met.

46

46.1

1 (beyond) reasonable doubt 2 convict a criminal 3 crime wave 4 deny all knowledge 5 arrest 6 jury 7 street crime 8 commit a crime 9 pass sentence 10 criminal record 11 reach a verdict 12 make a claim 13 be insured

47

47.1
1 Subject 2 Object 3 Subject
4 Object 5 Subject

47.2
1 The dog **which** is standing outside the police station is a drug-detection dog.
2 The woman **that** was crying had been robbed by two men on a motorcycle.
3 The man **who** was sent to prison had stolen hundreds of credit cards.
4 The man **who** is talking to the police officer had his car stolen.
5 The job **which** I'd like to do after my graduation is in crime prevention.

47.3
1 The old man **who / that** got lost in the city is 98 years old.
2 The lion **which / that** was born in captivity was released into the wild.
3 The crime **which / that** we reported is being broadcast on TV!
4 The woman **who / that** found Samantha's purse is a cleaner.
5 The cat **which / that** I recently adopted is black and white.
6 The woman **who / that** I introduced you to last Wednesday is a model.

47.4
1 The rooster **that crows loudly all day** belongs to my neighbor.
2 A movie **which won a lot of awards** is *Crazy Cuckoo*.
3 The woman **I dated last year** is now married.
4 The runner **who won the marathon** was running his first race.
5 The jacket **which I bought five years ago** is now falling apart.
6 The restaurant **that serves the best food** is in the main square.
7 The school **I went to as a little girl** is now a hotel.
8 The teacher **who I liked best at school** was Mr. Jenkins.

47.5
1 The stolen goods, which were extremely valuable, were found by the police.
2 My little brother, who is only six, is always getting into trouble at school.
3 The robbers, who were all from Southampton, were caught as they tried to leave the crime scene.
4 My house, which I moved into two months ago, has been burgled.

47.6
1 The robber, **who** left his fingerprints behind, was easily caught by the police.
2 My wallet, **which** was in my bag, was stolen while we were in the market.
3 Mr. Townsend, **who** is a suspect in a murder inquiry, has fled the country.
4 My credit card details, **which** I'd used for an online purchase, were stolen.

47.7
1 Not given 2 True 3 True
4 False 5 Not given 6 True
7 Not given 8 False 9 True

48

48.1
1 That's the restaurant **where** we ate that excellent chicken curry.
2 There was an agreement **whereby** both sides decided to support each other.
3 This is the church **where** my parents got married 30 years ago.
4 He's thinking about the time **when** we went to Barcelona for the weekend.
5 We use an application procedure **whereby** everything is done electronically.
6 The director talked about the area **where** the film was shot.
7 That's the office **where** my colleagues Jessica and Peter work.
8 We're now in the packing area **where** all of the items are packed.
9 Heat treatment is a process **whereby** heat is applied to metals.
10 This photo is from the semester **when** we lived in the dorm.
11 We provide a system **whereby** companies can find talented people.

48.2
1 The kitchen is **the room where** I most enjoy spending my time. I just love cooking.
2 Early morning is **the time of day when** I'm by myself and can have some peace and quiet.
3 Spring is **the season when** we most enjoy going out for walks in the country.
4 Photosynthesis is **the process whereby** plants convert sunlight into energy.
5 This is **the exhibition hall where** the last annual trade fair for construction systems was held.

48.3
1 The TV program gave us a lot of information about the process **whereby** cheese is produced.
2 That was the big museum in New York **where** they have those wonderful Picasso masterpieces.
3 That was the time **when** the car broke down and we had to wait hours before someone came to help.
4 I'm just waiting for the moment **when** everyone goes quiet so I can start speaking.
5 We're looking at the process **whereby** fuel is burned to create the steam that drives the turbine.

48.4
2

48.5
1 Fiona, whose dog is large and energetic, always walks in the park in the morning.
2 ZFF, whose CEO gave an interview on TV last night, is a company that is starting to work in China.
3 Jack, whose school has received more money for music classes, is learning to play the trumpet.
4 Francesca, whose computer has just crashed, is really stressed out right now.
5 Mandy, whose mother has suddenly become ill, took some time off work last week.
6 The company, whose employees now have unlimited time off, has innovative HR policies.
7 The tennis club, whose tennis courts are located on the outskirts of the town, is expanding every year.

48.6 Model Answers
1 The writer didn't notice anything unusual when he got home from work that day.
2 The writer found out that the smoke was actually coming from across the hall where Mr. Jerome lives.
3 The writer called the fire department. It arrived at the apartment building when the smoke was really starting to build up.
4 The firefighters organized a procedure whereby some of them tried to enter from the balcony and others tried to break down the door.
5 There wasn't too much damage to the apartment where the fire started.
6 Nobody was hurt in the fire.

49

49.1
1 Unfortunately, I will have to cancel our meeting because I won't be able to make it.
2 Will you be able to pay the fine if you park your car in this restricted zone?
3 I won't be able to get to sleep if my neighbors are making a lot of noise.

4 Will you have to stay in and study for your final exams?
5 We will have to get a good night's sleep tonight because we have an early start.
6 Will you have to take all six exams this semester?
7 We will not be able to meet our deadlines because the company hasn't delivered on time.
8 Will you be able to help me translate this text from Portuguese to English?
9 I won't be able to help you with the translation because I'm really busy at the moment.

49.2

1 We will have to work hard next month.
2 Will you have to look after the visitors all day?
3 They won't have to do everything on their own.
4 We will have to recycle more of our paper.

49.3

1 Next year we **will have to** save more money, so that we'll be able to buy a house soon.
2 I'm sorry, but I **will not be able to** come to your concert this evening. I have to work late.
3 **Will you be able to** join us for our annual school reunion next week? It would be great to see you.
4 We **will not be able to** visit the clients in person this Friday, so we will have to call them instead.
5 **Will he have to** travel a lot in his new job or will he be able to stay at home a little bit more?

49.4

1 According to the weather forecast, it will snow tomorrow, so we **will be able to** go skiing.
2 He **won't be able to** take the course he wanted to do because it's been canceled.
3 I hope that one day every person **will be able to** realize their full potential.
4 When we turn the next corner, you **will be able to** see the beach and the ocean.
5 She's so happy that she **won't have to** wear braces on her teeth any more.
6 If you want to come to the party, you **will have to** let me know by Friday at the latest.
7 If anyone would like a signed copy of the book, you **will be able to** buy one later.
8 You **won't have to** do so much paperwork now that you've got a secretary.

49.5 Model Answers

1 He won't be able to get very good grades and he may even fail.
2 Peter is able to make everyone think that everything's OK, even when it isn't.
3 If Peter doesn't pass his exams, he'll have to repeat the year.
4 Peter will be able to get some extra support over the next few months if Mr. Foster is able to give it to him.

49.6

1 True 2 True 3 True 4 Not given
5 False 6 Not given 7 True
8 False 9 True

50

50.1

1 He's a great runner. He **can** run twelve miles in two hours.
2 **May** I have another piece of cake? It's delicious.
3 That **can't** be Dominic at the door because he's in Spain at the moment.
4 When I was younger, I **could** party all night, but now I'm older I can't.
5 **Shall** we have lunch together on Thursday? It would be great to catch up.
6 Don't worry, I **will** make sure that everything's ready on time.
7 **Would** you go down to reception and meet the visitors for me?
8 Joanna said she **might** join us, but she probably wouldn't be able to make it.
9 You've had that cough for two weeks now. You **should** go to the doctor.

50.2

1 You **must** take your laptop out of your bag before you go through security control.
2 You **may** stay here as long as you want. Just remember to lock the door when you leave.
3 **Shall** I give you a ride home afterward? I'll be in the area at that time anyway.
4 **May** I help you carry your suitcase up the stairs?
5 When I was a child I **couldn't** do a handstand, but now I can!
6 **Will** you help me prepare the training course for our Spanish colleagues?
7 If that doesn't work, you **could** call Edward and ask him if he knows what to do.
8 Since he had his operation, he **can't** walk more than 10 steps.

50.3

1 Don't put your fingers so close to the pan. **You could burn yourself.**
2 Should I help you move those boxes, **so you don't have so much to do?**
3 Will you check that the door **is locked when you leave?**
4 You must go to reception to register **before you can go to the meeting room.**
5 May I have another cookie? **They taste delicious!**
6 I can't speak French very well, **but I can understand a lot.**
7 He ought to go to the hairdresser and **get a decent haircut for a change.**
8 Would you call and ask **if it's OK for us to arrive a little later?**

50.4

1 You should have asked your boss to pay you for the overtime you did.
2 He lost his voice, so he couldn't teach his classes last week.
3 I can't find my keys anywhere. I must have left them at home.
4 She should have asked me for advice. I would have been able to help.
5 Could you visit the museum when you were on vacation, or was it closed?

50.5

1 You should have **brought** your laptop to the meeting. Sarah reminded you yesterday.
2 They ought to **have** more respect for the neighbors when they have a party.
3 Why didn't you ask? I would **have** shared a taxi from the airport to the hotel with you.
4 I know what happened. We must **have taken** a wrong turn just after we left the hotel.

51

51.1

1 values
2 bad habit
3 lifestyle
4 stereotype
5 local custom
6 blend in
7 diversity
8 acclimate
9 manners
10 cause offense
11 nationality
12 globalization
13 dialect

52

52.1

1 The Dutch 2 Kenyans 3 The Swiss
4 The Vietnamese 5 Australians
6 Egyptians 7 Argentinians
8 Koreans 9 The Spanish 10 Greeks
11 The Japanese 12 Brazilians 13 The British

52.2

1 We're looking for ways of helping **the homeless find accommodation.**
2 The young often have a reputation **for being wild and irresponsible.**
3 The British are known for their love of **fish and chips.**
4 Some people believe that the rich **should pay a much higher level of tax.**
5 Pets are seen as excellent companions f**or the elderly.**
6 We have started distributing food **to the poor.**
7 The injured were airlifted to the hospital **immediately after the accident.**

52.3

1 We've built these ramps and put in these rails to help **the disabled** access the building.
2 I think that **the rich** should give away more of their money to people who are in need.
3 The emergency services have given **the injured** all of the medical attention they need.
4 **The young** are the group who are likely to spend the most time using social media.
5 In Nairobi, **the poor** live on the edges of the city in homes they've built themselves.
6 Ancient **Egyptians** worshipped cats.
7 We offer accomodation for **the elderly** who can no longer live alone.
8 **The Swiss** are known throughout the world for making clocks and chocolate.
9 We don't want **the healthy** to come into contact with infectious diseases.
10 If you'd like to help **the homeless** who live on our streets, come along to our soup kitchen.
11 **The unemployed** sometimes aren't offered very much help with finding a new job.
12 He decided to become a doctor because he wanted to help **the sick**.

52.4

1 Unemployed people are welcome to come and volunteer at the library if they want to.
2 Our charity was set up to help the elderly by organizing a weekly social meet-up for them.
3 The majority of Germans were in support of the decision.
4 Our first priority is to help the injured. Then we can talk to journalists about what's happened.
5 This fort was built by the Dutch in the late 1600s.
6 The government wants to introduce a new law, which will make the rich pay more in taxes.
7 These parking spaces are only for the disabled. Can you please park somewhere else?
8 Most Brazilians are taught English at school.
9 The homeless are sometimes seen as dangerous, but this is far from the truth.
10 The British are coming over here to learn more about our processes and how we do things.
11 I decided to become a nurse because I really wanted to be able to help the sick.
12 The French are known for being very relaxed and this is also something I've noticed.

52.5 Model Answers

1 The poor **are supported by the government and by charities.**
2 The sick **are often reluctant to see a doctor as healthcare can be expensive.**
3 The disabled **are considered every time a new building is constructed.**
4 The unemployed **are encouraged to volunteer in a field that interests them.**
5 The young **are always portrayed as loud and lazy.**
6 The homeless **have to rely on donations from strangers.**
7 The rich **are seen as a very lucky group of people.**

53

53.1

1 It took me a while to **get** used to the stores being closed on Sundays here.
2 He's been starting work at 6am for three months now, so he **is** used to it.
3 As we live in the north of Norway, we **are** used to very cold weather in winter.
4 I'm still **getting** used to the fast pace of activity in my new company.
5 When he first went to live in Australia, he **wasn't** used to the heat and got burned.
6 You've been working with us for some time, so you **are** used to the way we work now.
7 I just can't **get** used to working every weekend. I don't think I'll ever like it.
8 Don't worry about Rachel! She **is** used to traveling on her own.
9 When we had our first child, we had to **get** used to not having very much sleep.
10 We've had our new boss for six months now, but I'm still **getting** used to her style.
11 Jeremy lives in Los Angeles, so he **is** used to living through minor earthquakes.

53.2

1 Three years after moving, I think we **are** finally used to life in the country and really like it.
2 After a while you'll **get** used to the rhythm of the train and fall asleep.
3 He **is** used to sleeping on a very soft bed at home, so he doesn't like hard beds.
4 I was just **getting** used to our old English teacher when she left and we got a new one.
5 He **is** now so used to wearing glasses that he doesn't even notice them anymore.
6 I **was** used to taking the train every day and I knew the timetable by heart.

53.3

1 Our customers from other countries **are** used to getting very high quality products from us.
2 I don't think Christina will ever **get** used to living on her own. She doesn't like it.
3 **We're** used to being able to communicate with people from all over the world online.
4 My friend is **not used** to eating spicy food, so it makes him go red in the face.
5 He is still **getting** used to the new house he bought last year.
6 Our children Joseph and Liz are used to **being** away from the two of us while we're at work.

53.4

1 You will have to get used to working **long hours if you want to be on this team.**
2 We were used to bringing lunch **to work, but now we eat in the canteen.**
3 Jack's slowly getting used to living **in a dorm instead of at home.**
4 The new shoes were uncomfortable, **but she soon got used to them.**
5 I'm used to sitting through long and **boring lectures. I do it every day.**

53.5

1 The UK 2 His boss 3 Japan 4 Direct
5 Strangers 6 Nice restaurants
7 Street markets

53.6

1 Our neighbors are so loud, but we'll just have to **get used to** the noise.
2 I've lived in Tokyo for 10 years now, so I'm **used to** Japanese food.
3 My boss was pleased about how quickly I **got used to** giving presentations.
4 We may have to **get used to** traveling a little farther to get to the shops soon.
5 We were just **getting used to** the new office when we had to move to another one.
6 He's been working in virtual teams for a long time now, so he's **used to** it.

53.7

1 was used to 2 get used to
3 get used to 4 was used to
5 get used to 6 get used to
7 get used to 8 get used to
9 are used to

54

54.1

1 **The** investors who come to us have a lot of money to invest in companies.
2 We paid for **an** audio guide in the palace and it gave us some interesting information.
3 **The** CEO of our company is surprisingly young. He's only 30 years old!
4 If you want to travel cheaply in Paris, you should take **the** Métro.
5 After dinner, I bought **an** ice cream cone and ate it while I was sitting by the fountain.
6 The Eiffel Tower is probably **the** most famous landmark in Paris.
7 We were so busy and did so much walking that I need **an** early night tonight.
8 The flag is up, so **the** Queen must be in the palace today.
9 It's amazing how quickly **the** company's share price is going up at the moment.
10 We're thinking about hiring **a** boat tomorrow and taking it out on the water.
11 My hotel has **a** beautiful view of the harbor and the sea.

54.2

1 The people who live in our town **don't want the new road to be built.**
2 The restaurant we went to last night **is the one where pizza was invented.**
3 I don't know why, but spaghetti **always tastes better when you're in Italy.**
4 A large number of vacationers **want to stay in an all-inclusive hotel.**
5 City tours that are free **usually aren't as good as ones you pay for.**

54.3

1 **The** Petronas Towers are the tallest buildings in Kuala Lumpur and they dominate the skyline.
2 If you go up to the top of the tower, you get **an** excellent view of Kuala Lumpur.
3 Street food stands on the side of **the** road are great places to try Malaysian food.
4 You can also visit **the** Islamic Arts Museum if you go to Kuala Lumpur. It's interesting.
5 Taking **a** day trip to the nearby Batu Caves is a good idea if you have time.
6 Have you walked through **the** colorful China Town market in Kuala Lumpur?

54.4

1 This is **the** old typewriter that my mother always used to use.
2 People from Brazil are known for their love of **[-]** football.
3 I've never seen such **a** wide selection of foods for breakfast as they had there.
4 They love **[-]** Chinese food, so I'm sure they'll enjoy their trip to China.
5 Our tour guide is **an** older lady who's lived in Dublin all her life.
6 There's **a** university in Bologna which is nearly 1,000 years old.
7 Here's our guide to **the** travel destinations that will be the most popular next year.
8 **The** waitress who served us at that restaurant was very friendly and helpful.
9 Children usually enjoy visiting **the** zoo in Edinburgh. You can even see pandas there.
10 Churros are very popular in **[-]** Spain. People eat them with chocolate sauce.
11 I wasn't sure whether we should leave **a** tip for the waiter or not.
12 **The** music festival we went to was brilliant. There were a lot of good bands playing.
13 **The** hotel where we stayed is a five-star hotel, so it was very luxurious.

54.5

1 False 2 True 3 True 4 True 5 False

54.6

1 Let's call a plum**b**er to fix the water heater.
2 Foreig**n** visitors think we speak good English.
3 I hurt my **k**nee while we were trekking.
4 I like to lis**t**en to music while I'm traveling.
5 To be **h**onest, I don't think I like him.
6 It's so cold. My fingers are num**b**.
7 He has just trapped his thum**b** in the door!

55

55.1

1 We often find that men aren't as good at taking care of their **health** as women are.
2 She made her **anger** at the graffiti on the wall clear to everyone in the room.
3 Unfortunately, the funding for all of the **libraries** in our area has been cut this year.
4 He's been having some **trouble** getting his computer to start all week.
5 Could you please email me all of the **information** I need for my trip to Peru?
6 Our company specializes in creating **beauty** products for young women.
7 He has a lot of **knowledge** about the history of the Middle Ages.
8 I've made a list of all the **deadlines** for the project in this document.
9 We take a lot of **pride** in our work and always do our very best.
10 It's absolutely freezing today. It must be about minus fifteen **degrees** outside!
11 We're facing some fierce **competition** from companies in South America.

55.2

1 My **thoughts** are with the families of the victims of the disaster at this terrible time.
2 I come from Nigeria and my **culture** is very important to me. I keep the traditions alive.
3 Our **hope** is that our daughter will go to college and get a good job.
4 Your **friendship** is really important to me, and I hope you feel the same.
5 My happiest childhood **memories** are of spending the summer in Sweden with my family.
6 I save some money every month and then at the end of the year I give it to local **charities**.

55.3

1 You can now all find out what **grades you got on the exam.**
2 My car has a top speed **of 100 miles per hour.**
3 The kittens your cat gave **birth to are real beauties.**
4 I'm going to write the neighbors **a letter of apology for all of the noise.**
5 My cousin Matthew repairs **computers for a living.**
6 We're here today because we're **interested in learning more about other cultures.**
7 Nowadays it's more and more **important to have good communication skills.**
8 I make a living from entering **competitions. You can win so much!**
9 You have to study for six **semesters before you get your degree.**

55.4

1 The temperatures this summer are some of the highest in living **memory**.
2 I work hard on my **friendships** because friends are an important part of my life.
3 She hopes that she will complete her **studies** and graduate next summer.
4 We're collecting money for **charity**, but we haven't decided which one we'll give it to yet.
5 There are a lot of free parking **spaces** at the front of the building if you're still looking.
6 You will be in our **thoughts** while you're away and we'll call you as often as we can.
7 There's always a lot of **competition** in the soft drink market. It's hard to break through.
8 He takes so much **pride** in his garden and he wants other people to enjoy it, too.
9 There are so many **times** when I wish I had a robot who could do the housework for me.
10 She decided to take all of her **knowledge** about marketing and put it into a book.
11 The **skill** he has for soccer is unbelievable for someone of his age.
12 The company is known for the very high **quality** of their kitchen products.

56

56.1

1. make predictions
2. what the future holds
3. only a matter of time
4. have an influence on something
5. future-proof
6. revolution
7. the latest model
8. breakthrough
9. make arrangements
10. have good intentions
11. digital age
12. hope for the best
13. cutting-edge

57

57.1

1. My job at the supermarket is so boring, I wish I **could** find another one.
2. I wish Rosemary **would stop** talking about herself all the time. It's so annoying!
3. I wish my teacher **would** give me more help. I don't understand any of this.
4. They wish they **could** take some time off work so they could go on vacation.
5. He wishes he **could** win the first prize in the competition he's entered.
6. She **wishes** she could get a leading role in the play, but she never goes to auditions.
7. I wish I **could** afford to get a new kitchen. This one is so old it's falling apart.
8. Adam wishes his teacher **would** give him more homework. He doesn't have enough to do.
9. I wish they **would** make it easier to work out how much tax you have to pay.

57.2

1. I wish my boss **would** be a little more polite. He's always rude to everyone.
2. Linda wishes she **could** drive to work, but she still hasn't passed her driving test.
3. They wish their neighbors **would** be a bit quieter. They're always making noise.
4. I wish they **would** tell us what's going to happen now instead of making us wait.
5. Jacob wishes he **could** relax, but he can't because he's having a stressful time at work.
6. I wish we **could** go on a helicopter ride around Manhattan, but we can't afford it.
7. Susanne wishes her daughter **would** call her more often. She only calls once a month.
8. I wish the people on the train **would** move their bags off the seats next to them.
9. They wish they **could** get a good espresso in this town, but they can't find one anywhere.

57.3

1. My job is really boring. I wish **I could find something more interesting.**
2. The snails are eating my plants. I wish **I could get rid of them once and for all.**
3. The rules are so complicated. I wish **they would make them simpler.**
4. I can't type very quickly. I wish **my boss would let me take a course.**
5. They always leave a mess. I wish **they would think about other people.**
6. The bus always takes so long. I wish **I could drive instead.**
7. I'm so sleepy. I wish **I could go to bed.**
8. That machine is very noisy. I wish **someone would turn it off.**

57.4

1. The students wish they **could** speak perfect English.
2. He wishes his teacher **would** give him more help.
3. She wishes she **could** go to the party.
4. We wish they **would** let us leave work early.

57.5

1. She wants to travel less
2. Far away from headquarters
3. Move the headquarters to a better place
4. Internal sales team leader
5. Geoff is going to retire

57.6 Model Answers

1. Jessica wishes she could relax and take it easy this summer.
2. Jessica wishes you could get an accountancy job straight after leaving college.
3. It will be another five years before Jessica is a qualified accountant.
4. Jessica wishes she could go to the beach with Josh on Monday.

58

58.1

1. Sheila is sick, so she**'ll be working** from home for the rest of the week.
2. This time next week, I**'ll be sitting** on a beach in the Caribbean.
3. The boss thinks that in 10 years' time I**'ll be running** this company myself.
4. They**'ll be traveling** for the next two hours and won't be able to take any calls.
5. It looks like we**'ll be spending** a lot of time together over the next few months.
6. The pilots are on strike, so I think I**'ll be waiting** at the airport for a while.
7. Will you **be bringing** your husband and children with you tomorrow?
8. He**'ll be standing** near the entrance waiting for us when we get there.
9. I**'ll be driving** past the stores later if you want me to get some groceries.
10. We **won't be launching** our new perfume until the trade fair next year.
11. James has applied for some jobs, so I think he**'ll be leaving** the company soon.

58.2

1. By this time next week, I'll be working in a big city.
2. By this time tomorrow, I'll be working in a big city.
3. By this time tomorrow, I'll be working as a manager.
4. By this time tomorrow, I'll be living in a big city.
5. By this time tomorrow, I'll be relaxing on vacation.
6. By this time next week, I'll be working as a manager.
7. By this time next week, I'll be living in a big city.
8. By this time next week, I'll be relaxing on vacation.
9. In five years' time, I'll be working in a big city.
10. In five years' time, I'll be working as a manager.
11. In five years' time, I'll be living in a big city.
12. In five years' time, I'll be relaxing on vacation.

58.3

1. The next time I go to the mountains, I'll be **skiing** like an expert.
2. In a few years' time, **I'll be** playing basketball professionally.
3. We will **be** hosting some visitors from China next week.
4. This evening **they'll** be serving snacks and drinks for everyone.
5. In five years' time, I won't be **teaching** at a primary school any more.
6. Will you **be** asking for input from the audience during your presentation?

58.4

1. We'll be using this software in 10 years' time.
2. Lisa will be working until 6pm today.
3. The bus will be leaving in five minutes.
4. This train will be stopping at Central Station.
5. Next week, I will be working from home.

58.5

1. True
2. False
3. Not given
4. True
5. False

58.6 Model Answers

1. In a few years' time, five billion people will be shopping online.
2. Around half of these people will be using tablets to access the internet.
3. Connected devices will become so integrated into our lives that we'll see them as "digital assistants."
4. We can assume that someone, somewhere will be buying something online right now.
5. Every retail company will be selling their products on the web in 10 years' time.
6. Future internet users will be able to get online wherever they are.

59

59.1

1. I **will have finished** my degree by the time I am 22.
2. You **will have been** married for one year in a week's time.
3. We **will have completed** all our essays by the end of June.
4. By the time I am 24, I **will have found** a good job.
5. I think my son **will have proposed** to his girlfriend by the end of the year.
6. By the time we are 30, we **will have had** our first child.
7. Liza **will have moved** to London by the end of the month.
8. I **will have graduated** from college by this time next year.
9. By the time I am 25, I **will have left** my parents' house.
10. I **will have made** one million dollars by the time I'm 40.
11. They **will have started** their new business by the end of the month.

59.2

1. will have found
2. will have perfected
3. will have opened
4. will have been
5. will have sold
6. will have increased
7. will have made
8. will have taken
9. will have launched

59.3

1. They **will have chosen** the best candidate by the end of the day.
2. Jenny **will have bought** a new dress before the wedding.
3. By the end of the year, I **will have completed** three marathons.
4. I **will have opened** all my presents by the end of the party.
5. By the time he starts his new job, Hans **will have had** his hair cut.
6. We **will have visited** 15 countries by the end of this year.

59.4

1. By the time we arrive in Spain, we **will have been driving** for eight hours.
2. Jenna **will have been running** her own business for five years in May.
3. In June, I **will have been working** as a teacher for 10 years.
4. By the time the cake is decorated, we **will have been cooking** for six hours.
5. I **will have been doing** yoga for 10 years by the end of the year.
6. In November, Becky and I **will have been living** together for three years.
7. By midday, Jonas **will have been waiting** to see the doctor for three hours.
8. By the time I have finished, I **will have been cleaning** the house for five hours.
9. By the time the plane lands in Malaysia, we **will have been traveling** for 13 hours.
10. By December, I **will have been learning** to paint for six months.
11. I **will have been studying** medicine for four years by the end of June.
12. By the end of next month, the police **will have been looking** for the criminals for a year.

59.5

1. At the end of the week, Lise will have been studying in France for three months.
2. This time tomorrow, I will have had my operation.
3. I will have finished this report by the time you get here.
4. Next week, I will have been studying for two years.
5. By the end of January, I will have finished my Italian course.
6. In two hours, I will have written my last report for this client.

59.6

1. been
2. had
3. known
4. been

60

60.1

1. I always thought that I **would** go to college, but I then decided to get a job instead.
2. As soon as I get home, I **will** give you a call to let you know I've arrived safely.
3. I'm sure that we **will** still be friends when we're older. There's no doubt about that.
4. He said that he **would** try to get me some tickets for the soccer game if he could.

60.2

1. I got up so late, I knew I wasn't going to get to the airport in time.
2. Sarah's an excellent swimmer, so I knew it was going to be hard to beat her.
3. My mother promised she wasn't going to embarrass me by hugging me in public.
4. I found the exam easy, so I believed I was going to get a good grade.
5. He knew he wasn't going to get the job, but he wanted to apply for it anyway.

60.3

1. They couldn't come last week because they **were** going to a soccer game that evening.
2. She **was taking** her English exam the next day, so she felt a little nervous.
3. They **were** meeting with their lawyers that afternoon to decide what to do.
4. Sandra **was** planning to fly to Tenerife with her daughter yesterday, but the pilots are on strike.
5. Gareth **was** making a big announcement that afternoon, but then he lost his voice.
6. Camy and Charlie **were** having a big party to celebrate their anniversary that weekend.
7. Harren **was** getting married to Jennifer at 2 o'clock that afternoon in New York.

60.4

1. No
2. Yes
3. No

60.5

1. I knew that I would be the marketing head of a leading company one day.
2. When I saw him I knew that I was going to marry him and move to another country.
3. I was taking my last exam in chemistry at college that afternoon.
4. I thought I would travel around the world working as a part-time photographer.
5. She believed she would get a recording contract as soon as she finished her course at college.
6. I knew I would be late when I saw how much traffic there was on the road.
7. I was meeting some Chinese customers that morning for a presentation on distribution.
8. I thought Shania and Jo would go somewhere warm for their holiday that year.
9. He was building an extension on the back of their house in Germany.
10. I decided I would retire early and spend more time with my family and close friends.
11. I knew I was going to be able to climb to the top of the mountain sooner than the others.
12. The company was interviewing some more people for the marketing job that week.

61

61.1
1. highbrow / lowbrow
2. novels
3. speak your mind
4. highly recommend
5. characters
6. plot
7. heap praise / criticism on something
8. glowing reviews
9. lasting impression
10. change your mind
11. make up your mind
12. opening / closing scenes
13. create an atmosphere

62

62.1
1. The ceremony honored firemen and paramedics.
2. We could go to the session on marketing or this talk on public relations.
3. It would be nice to go the theater or a film. You can decide.
4. This process was described by Gutmann and Quirke.
5. She could have directed the TV series or the film version.
6. They should use paper bags and recycle more of their garbage.
7. He might have become a great writer, but he didn't want to.
8. The problem is that he wants to leave work early, but she doesn't.
9. He was chosen to play the lead role and did an excellent job.
10. I could wear this yellow dress for the wedding or this blue skirt.
11. You could eat at the new Italian restaurant or the Mexican restaurant.

62.2
1. Your parents 2. Its plot 3. Spoof 4. Dedicated sci-fi fans 5. Sequel

62.3
1. I'm so sorry! I broke your television, but I didn't mean to [**break your television**].
2. We can't go to the movies tonight but we can [**go to the movies**] tomorrow.
3. He told me he could speak French, but I don't think he can [**speak French**].
4. My daughter loves horror films and [**my daughter loves**] thrillers.
5. We went to Venice and [**we**] rode in a gondola this summer.
6. She could sit in the kitchen or [**she could sit in**] the garden.
7. Do we need a new computer? We could get a laptop or [**we could get**] a tablet instead.
8. It's such a beautiful day. We should go to the park or [**we should go to**] the beach.
9. The critics loved the latest blockbuster and [**the critics**] said it was worth watching.
10. I need to borrow your car. I will email shortly to explain why [**I need to borrow your car**].

62.4
1. True 2. False 3. True 4. False
5. True 6. False 7. False

62.5
1. I worked really hard on my entry, so I was **bitterly** disappointed that I didn't win.
2. The line for tickets at the museum was **painfully** slow. I thought we would never get in.
3. I won't go to that restaurant again. The prices were **astronomically** high!
4. The trip was **ridiculously** long because we were stuck in traffic for two hours.
5. I was **deeply** moved by the poem she read at her mother's funeral.
6. Everyone knows that farmers in this country are **heavily** subsidized.
7. I think you should avoid mentioning any **highly** controversial topics in your talk.

62.6
1. We went for a walk in the woods **and took some wonderful photos of the trees.**
2. She emailed and called everyone **she knew who might be able to help.**
3. The cathedral is beautiful **and is the seat of the Bishop of Rouen.**
4. Do you think we should go on **a beach or city break?**
5. He went cycling along the Rhine **and visited a lot of vineyards.**
6. I want to move, **but he doesn't.**
7. Could you call or email him **and ask him to confirm the details.**
8. I can remember his name, **but not his face. It's been a long time.**
9. They went to Mauritius and **stayed at a wonderful resort on the coast.**
10. Do you want to cook **or go out for dinner tonight?**

63

63.1
1. I've eaten a lot of pizza in my time, but the **one** I ate in Rome last year was the best.
2. I love these high-heeled shoes, but I think it's time I got some new **ones**.
3. Kirsten did well on both parts of the exam, but she did especially well on the first **one**.
4. I really like the movies he's in, especially the earlier **ones** from the start of his career.
5. Our daughter likes a lot of subjects at school, but the **one** she enjoys the most is science.
6. Mike has written a few books, but I think the first thriller he wrote is the best **one**.
7. Ann tried on 10 different wedding dresses before she found the **one** she wanted.
8. There are many activities for older children and some for younger **ones.**
9. I love all of the cakes Sam makes, but the **one** she made today was really delicious.
10. I've been to a lot of countries, but the **one** I enjoyed visiting the most was Japan.
11. Sarah isn't happy with her office assistant, so she wants to get a new **one.**

63.2
1. If you need any pens to write with, I have **some** here.
2. If you'd like a copy of my notes, I will print **one** for you.
3. They need some more batteries because the **ones** I gave them last time have run out.
4. If you find anywhere selling cups of coffee, could you get me **one**?
5. There's water here in case you need to use **some** while you're painting.
6. My new computer is slower than the **one** I got rid of when I bought it.
7. This cheeseburger tastes as good as the **one** I ate in the other restaurant.

63.3
1. If you need any more paper to write on, there's **some** on my desk.
2. If you're looking for some new running shoes, I'd recommend the **ones** on the left.
3. I have three tickets and I only need two, so I could give you **one** if you like.
4. If you need any information about the building, ask me and I'll give you **some**.
5. If they like Italian restaurants, there's a great **one** just down the road.
6. I think Jenny and Matthew's wedding was the best **one** I've ever been to.

63.4
1. I know you want a new computer, **but we can't afford one.**

2 My sister bought me an album, **but it wasn't the one I wanted.**
3 If you're looking for bookstores, **there are some on Upper Street.**
4 I think my favorite authors **are the ones who write about vampires.**
5 We should buy new flowers **and get rid of these old ones.**
6 Please help yourself to tea or coffee **if you would like some.**
7 I wanted to bring a cake, **but I didn't have time to bake one.**

63.5

1 I didn't enjoy it, but my friend did.
2 Did you see the new movie? We did, too.
3 You bought a blue hat! I did, too.
4 Do I still cycle to work? Yes, I do.
5 He works downtown, but she doesn't.
6 My mom went, but my dad didn't.
7 Did you bring your camera? I didn't.
8 You baked cookies! I did, too.
9 Does she like reading? Yes, she does.
10 They went skiing last year, but we didn't.
11 My friend found it difficult. I did, too.

63.6

1 False 2 False 3 True 4 True
5 True 6 True

63.7 Model Answers

1 I hope so!
2 I think so.
3 No, Steven Spielberg did.
4 I don't imagine so.
5 I assume so.

64

64.1

1 I wanted to wake up early today, but I wasn't able to.
2 Stefan was enjoying the ballet. At least, he seemed to be.
3 I'm so nervous! I'm singing on stage tonight, but I really don't want to.
4 Your dog likes chasing people a lot more than he used to.
5 I'm so thirsty! I meant to buy a drink before the movie, but I forgot.
6 Don't be nervous. There's no need to be.
7 Darren said he'd help us unpack, but it seems that he won't be able to.
8 I really wanted to go to that concert, but I couldn't afford to.
9 If you want to be promoted, you have to show me that you deserve to be.
10 Helena asked me to join the college choir, but I didn't want to.
11 I'm sorry I'm so late! I didn't mean to be.

64.2

1 I'd really like to go away this year, but I won't **be** able to.
2 Keisha said I should go to her party tonight, but I don't really want **to**.
3 I tried to find out Will's email address, but I wasn't **able** to.
4 Frankie liked the birthday present we bought her. At least, she seemed **to**.
5 I didn't realize that it was necessary to wear a tie, but apparently we have **to**.
6 I'm very concerned about my test results, even though the doctor says there's no need **to** be.

64.3

1 False 2 True 3 False 4 True 5 False

64.4

1 I'd really like to buy a new pair of shoes, **though I don't need to.**
2 I'm not sure if I can visit my aunt this weekend, **but I hope to.**
3 Jonas would really like to buy a car, **but he can't afford to.**
4 I'll watch a movie if all my friends want to, **but I wouldn't choose to.**
5 I don't insist on going to warm countries for vacations, **although I prefer to.**
6 I tried to get tickets for the concert, **but I wasn't able to.**

64.5

1 I am always really nervous before I go to the doctor's. It's difficult not **to be**.
2 It's not certain that I'll do well on my exams, but I **expect** to.
3 Marie wants me to go shopping with her, but I really don't **want** to.
4 I've never been to the US. I'd love the **chance**.
5 You can get a vaccination before your trip, but you don't **need** to.

64.6

1 I love listening to loud music, but my sister hates to.
2 You can leave work early this afternoon if you would like to.
3 Gigi asked me to go to her wedding and I said I'd be delighted to.
4 Don't agree to do the fun run if you really don't want to.

64.7

1 Yes, **I'd be delighted to.**
2 No, **I don't want to.**
3 No, **you don't need to.**
4 Yes, **she seemed to.**
5 No, **I can't afford to.**

65

65.1

1 Sorry, I had to take that call. So **as I was saying**, the gallery opened in 1903.
2 I've been to that museum, too. Hey, I love your shoes, **by the way**.
3 This gallery is beautiful. Oh, **by the way**, did you see there's a new café downstairs?
4 You think he's an expert? **Actually**, he doesn't really know anything about art.
5 **Anyway**, I'm afraid I will have to say goodbye now, but thank you for today.
6 No, **actually**, it was George who thought we should buy this painting, not me.
7 Mike's very happy because, **as I was saying**, he's getting married next September.
8 Yes, I'd like some coffee. So, **as I was saying**, we've got a lot of paintings at home.
9 **Anyway**, I'm sure you'll have a great time in Tokyo. See you when you get back!
10 So, **as I was saying**, Jenny and I have known each other for a long time.
11 Yes, **actually**, I've already been here a few times, so I know my way around.

65.2

1 Yes, but **as I was saying** before, I prefer Hockney.
2 No, it was sold out. **Anyway**, we should get moving!
3 I've already seen it, **actually**. I came here last month.
4 **Actually**, I've already been. But you go.

65.3

1 The fastest aircraft travel through the air at supersonic speeds.
2 Powerful computers can predict the outcomes of some experiments with amazing accuracy.
3 The first farms in human history were established in the Neolithic, or New Stone Age.
4 The postwar period, after the fighting had ended, saw an economic boom.

65.4

1 False 2 True 3 False 4 False 5 True

65.5

1 preview 2 superstructure
3 antibacterial 4 prolonged
5 neoclassical 6 postpone 7 antidote
8 superhuman 9 preassigned

65.6

1 He's interested in **neo**liberalism. I'm not sure what that is, but it's a new type of liberalism.
2 I've been enjoying the **pre**game buildup, but now I just can't wait for the game to start.
3 **Neo**classical architecture became popular when interest in ancient Greece rose again.
4 We've organized a **pre**-conference event so people can meet before the meetings start.
5 James must be **super**human! It's amazing how he manages to work and travel so much.
6 She specializes in **neo**natal care, so she looks after newborn babies.
7 **Post**modern art was a reaction by artists against the modernist art that came before it.
8 Instead of finishing her degree, she's decided to **post**pone her studies and go traveling.
9 You first go into the **ante**chamber of the tomb of Tutankhamun and then the main chamber.
10 If I could have any **super**power I wanted, I think it would be the ability to fly.
11 I've had enough of our neighbors' **anti**social behavior, they're always making noise!
12 We're celebrating the 50th anniversary of the introduction of **anti**discrimination laws.

66

66.1

1 I look so much better after having **my hair cut at the salon yesterday.**
2 Don't worry, we got the problem **with the internet sorted out in the end.**
3 Something's wrong with my back, so **I'm going to the doctor to get it checked.**
4 Ask the people at the restaurant if **we can get the food delivered to us.**
5 I'll call our landlord and ask him if **he can get the door fixed.**

66.2

1 My parents are having their house painted by a decorator.
2 He can't afford a new car, so he's getting it repaired.
3 Sally's getting her picture taken by a photographer.

66.3

1 False 2 True 3 False 4 False 5 False 6 True 7 False

66.4

1 Leah needs to go to the dentist as soon as possible **to have** her teeth fixed.
2 He's **getting** his birth certificate translated into English, so he can get married.
3 They **had** a marquee built in the grounds of the castle for their party last year.
4 She always **has** her essays checked by her mother before she hands them in.
5 My wedding ring **got** stolen when someone broke into our house last week.
6 We've been having problems with our website, but we're **getting** them sorted out.
7 Jessica can't come to the phone right now because she's **having** her nails done.
8 We've **had** a lot of changes made to the house since we moved in five years ago.
9 He's been **having** his hair cut at that barber's shop since he was five years old.

66.5

1 get 2 have 3 got 4 have 5 have 6 get 7 having 8 checked 9 check 10 had

66.6

1 I got a pizza delivered.
2 I got my car fixed.
3 We're having our house painted.
4 I'm getting my shirts dry-cleaned.
5 I got my picture taken.
6 I got the oven repaired.
7 I got my teeth checked.
8 They're having their garden landscaped.
9 I had my essay translated.
10 I got my eyesight tested.
11 I got my laundry done.

66.7

1 I'm having problems with my eyes, so I went to the optician to **get them checked**.
2 You won't believe it. I **had it stolen** when we were on vacation!
3 You can either pick the pizza up from the restaurant or you can **have it delivered**.
4 The business cards are here. Would you like me to **have them sent** to your home address?
5 No, but I can't believe how filthy it is. I need to **have it dry-cleaned** as soon as possible.
6 No, the internet at home still isn't working properly. We need to **get it sorted out** this week.
7 No, I'm going to the hairdresser's to **have it cut.**

67

67.1

1 The **audience** was so appreciative of our performance that they gave us three encores.
2 All the **staff** at the hotel where we stayed were extremely friendly and helpful.
3 My son's **orchestra** is doing a concert at the town hall on Saturday evening.
4 Jake's **family** is always arguing. His brother and sister are the worst.
5 Next week, all the **teams** in the office are going to do extra training.
6 The **government** is holding an emergency session to discuss foreign policy issues.
7 Our **department** is known for being the most environmentally friendly in the company.
8 My **company** is the market leader in the digital industry and has been for 10 years now.
9 Later this afternoon our **panel** is going to be discussing the issues you mentioned.

67.2

1 Spain has a very long border with Portugal. It's one of the longest in Europe.
2 The Netherlands is one of the best countries to go on vacation if you like cycling.
3 He's great at soccer, but athletics is the sport that he wants to focus on from now on.
4 Politics was my favorite subject at school, so I decided to study it in college.
5 The news about the celebrity couple was very hard to believe.

67.3

1 Either an essay or a report **is required by the end of this week.**
2 Neither my mom nor my dad **was there when I got home.**
3 Neither my cell phone nor my laptop **is connected to the internet.**
4 Media studies is a very popular **subject among the students.**
5 I think that either a dog or a cat **is the best pet to get.**
6 Neither my teacher nor my friends **know when our test will be.**
7 Either a box of chocolates or some perfume **is the best gift to give someone.**
8 Logistics is the area of the business world **that's the most interesting to me.**

67.4

1 All of the information about this **is** available to you on the college's website.
2 Neither my dad nor my mom **were** very happy when I got suspended from school.
3 **Is** *The Dragon Leader* a good book or do you not like fantasy novels?
4 Either pop music or rock music **is** what I like to listen to when I'm relaxing.
5 Physics **is** what Charlie studied in college, too.
6 Politics **is** slowly moving to the left in this country at the moment.
7 **Is** the mathematics you're doing in your class very difficult or can you do it easily?
8 Neither my presentation nor my essay **was** good enough to get me a passing grade.

9 The Bahamas **has** very warm weather at this time of year, so I'd recommend going there.
10 Either English or Spanish **is** the language that people most commonly learn at our school.

67.5

1 Not given
2 True
3 False
4 True
5 False
6 True
7 Not given

67.6

1 *Jungle Adventures* **is** the new television show that everyone is talking about.
2 The US **is** the largest country in North America when it comes to population.
3 This information **needs** to be shared with everyone else in the team right away.
4 Neither the adults nor the children **were** interested in the entertainment they provided.
5 I think politics **isn't** a topic that you should discuss when you're making small talk.
6 Neither my black suit nor my dark blue one **is** clean enough to wear.
7 Neither my phone nor Clark's phone **is** getting any signal at the moment.
8 Either the lemon or the lime **was** too strong in the sauce he made.
9 Everyone in Jack's family **is** interested in birdwatching, so he's going on a trip with them.
10 Neither history nor business **is** interesting to me.

68

68.1

1 Last night my mom called me to say that my grandma was very ill. It was **such** a shock.
2 Hong Kong is **such** a fascinating city. You should go there if you get the chance.
3 You've got **such** a difficult job. I don't think I'm patient enough to be a teacher.
4 He carried the baby **so** gently, as if he was scared she might break.
5 I can't believe I've got a job in Paris! It's **so** exciting!
6 That movie was **so** gripping. It was almost three hours long, but the time flew past!
7 You've got **such** a beautiful smile. Has anyone ever told you that?
8 It's always **such** a pleasure to spend time with Tom. He's a lovely man.
9 Keira is **so** generous. Did you know that she gave $250 to charity last month?
10 I'm not surprised the police stopped Mick. He drives **so** dangerously.
11 Thanks for responding **so** quickly. That was really efficient of you.
12 It was **such** a surprise when my cat turned up after being missing for six months!
13 You behaved **so** rudely in front of our guests. I felt quite embarrassed.
14 You learn languages **so** easily! Can you share your secret with me?
15 I think Martin is **so** brave. I couldn't do a bungee jump.
16 Your present job is **so** interesting. Is it also well paid, unlike the previous one?
17 *Back to City Life* was **such** a great book. I want to read it again!
18 It was **such** a relief when the doctor told me the good news. I've been celebrating.
19 I've had **such** a fun evening. Can I see you again tomorrow?

68.2

1 The medicine works so effectively **that we have a 98 percent cure rate.**
2 It was such a bad injury **that she was off work for months.**
3 It was such an unexpected result **that everyone was surprised.**
4 He recovered so quickly **that he was back at work within two weeks.**
5 Brian is so intelligent **that he's sure to go on to college.**
6 The doctor was so reassuring **that I didn't really feel worried.**

68.3

1 It's **such** a beautiful day. Why don't we go for a walk on the beach?
2 I am **so** grateful to the doctors that I'm going to send them a thank you card.
3 It was **such** a thrill to spend time with my grandchildren.
4 The movie was **so** boring that Pauline and I fell asleep.
5 It was **such** a surprise that I didn't know what to say.
6 Chantelle is **so** helpful. She's a lovely young woman.
7 Tom reacted **so** bravely when the doctor told him he had to go into the hospital.

68.4

1 **So** few people eat enough fruit and vegetables every day.
2 **So** little funding is available for research into age-related diseases.
3 There are so **many** medicines to choose from for your condition.
4 **So** many wonderful people work in our health service.
5 Charis feels so **much** better since she started doing more exercise.
6 **So** few students are bright enough to become doctors and engineers.
7 So **much** effort goes into making sure the patients are comfortable.
8 **So** little money is spent on healthcare services for the disabled.
9 **So** many people know someone who has been in the hospital.
10 There has been so **much** amazing progress in the field of medicine in the last decade.
11 So **much** time and money has been put into designing this new hospital.
12 It's so **much** easier to play sports since I lost a lot of weight.

68.5

1 Lyndsey is such an inspiration to me. I follow everything she posts on her blog.
2 Jamie made such an effort to find the right present for my birthday.
3 I have so much free time these days, I've started some new hobbies.
4 The exam was so easy that I wondered whether I had missed something.
5 You play the piano so beautifully! Can you play it again, please?
6 There are so few opportunities for people who can't read or write.

68.6

1 These stray cats are **such** a nuisance.
2 I feel **so** much calmer after a walk in the rain.
3 You opened the door **so** quietly last night.
4 *Color* was **so** amazing that I watched it again.
5 There are **so** many shirts to choose from.
6 It's **such** a lovely dress that I'm going to buy it.
7 My dog is always hungry. She eats **so** much.

69

69.1

1 My brother has **a** pet spider. I hate it!
2 I'd like a piece of cake and **an** orange juice, please.
3 **The** airplane was invented by the Wright brothers.
4 Can I ask you **a** question?
5 I can see **a** man over there with blond hair. But I'm not sure that it's Josh.
6 **The** bicycle is a very common form of transportation all over the world.
7 I have **an** arrangement with my colleague, where we share the commute to work.
8 There was **an** awkward silence when I asked Tami how her job was going.
9 **The** hummingbird is one of the smallest birds on the planet.

10 Would you like **a** cup of coffee?
11 **The** sandwich is named after the Earl of Sandwich, who supposedly invented it.

69.2

1 **An** apple a day keeps the doctor away.
2 **[-]** Women are still rarely paid as much as men.
3 **[-]** Human beings are the number-one predator on Earth.
4 There's **an** advertisement for a new smartwatch in today's paper.
5 **The** electric car is now a reality in many countries.
6 **[-]** Students usually don't have very much money.
7 **The** panda is in danger of becoming extinct.

69.3

1 I'm afraid there isn't a Mark Wilson in this office. Have you got the right name?
2 Are you saying you're good friends with John Smith?
3 This is my sister's best friend, Kristin Wyatt.
4 Let me introduce you to the manager of our company, Isaac Myers.
5 I don't know of a Lucy Armitage. Is there anyone else you'd like to speak to?
6 You don't mean the Cherry Baldwin, the famous actress, do you?

69.4

1 I can't find **a** Mikaela Zimmerman in the company directory. Are you sure she works here?
2 Did you manage to get yourself **a** ticket for the concert?
3 **The** cell phone has become a much smaller and lighter device in recent years.
4 Allow me to introduce you to my fiancé, **Brad** Livingstone.
5 I had **a** delicious meal at that new Italian restaurant last night.
6 There's no record of **a** Thomas Luckett ever having lived here.
7 **The** dog is often described as man's best friend. / **Dogs are** often described as man's best friend.
8 Can you believe I was sitting next to **the** Elizabeth Parker? She's such a huge star!
9 **The** dress is often the most important thing for a bride at her wedding.
10 This is my boss, **Francesco** Coppola.
11 We usually have **breakfast** at about 7:15am.
12 **The** internet has revolutionized our lives since its invention.

69.5

1 The company has captured **a significant share of the market.**
2 The tallest waterfalls in the world **are the famous Angel Falls in Venezuela.**
3 Izmir is the city with **the oldest working bridge.**
4 There isn't a Philip Fernandez here, **so you must have the wrong number.**
5 There was a good atmosphere in **the office until Jane started working here.**
6 We all know that the brain controls **everything that happens in our bodies.**
7 I couldn't believe that I was actually **sitting next to the Jo Halls. It was amazing!**

69.6

1 The Hawksbill turtle is a species that is critically endangered.
2 The Stephen Hawking told me I would become a scientist one day!
3 Televisions are now found in almost every home in the city.
4 I'm afraid that there isn't a Susie Fa on this list.

Acknowledgments

The publisher would like to thank:
Jo Kent, Trish Burrow, and Emma Watkins for additional text; Thomas Booth, Helen Fanthorpe, Helen Leech, Carrie Lewis, and Vicky Richards for editorial assistance; Stephen Bere, Sarah Hilder, Amy Child, Fiona Macdonald, and Simon Murrell for additional design work; Simon Mumford for maps and national flags; Peter Chrisp for fact checking; Penny Hands, Amanda Learmonth, and Carrie Lewis for proofreading; Elizabeth Wise for indexing; Tatiana Boyko, Rory Farrell, Clare Joyce, and Viola Wang for additional illustrations; Liz Hammond for editing audio scripts and managing audio recordings; Hannah Bowen and Scarlett O'Hara for compiling audio scripts; Richard Hughes and Jordan Killiard for mixing and mastering audio recordings; Heather Hughes, Tommy Callan, Tom Morse, Gillian Reid, and Sonia Charbonnier for creative technical support; Priyanka Kharbanda, Suefa Lee, Shramana Purkayastha, Isha Sharma, Sheryl Sadana for editorial support; Yashashvi Choudhary, Jaileen Kaur, Bhavika Mathur, Richa Verma, Anita Yadav, Apurva Agarwal for design support; Deepak Negi and Nishwan Rasool for picture research; Rohan Sinha for managerial and moral support.

DK would like to thank the following for their kind permission to reproduce photographs: 19 Peter Cook (c) **Dorling Kindersley**, Courtesy of the Pima Air and Space Museum, Tuscon, Arizona (center). 146 **Dreamstime.com:** Smellme (top right).

All other images are copyright DK. For more information, please visit **www.dkimages.com**